THE HISTORIE OF

THE GREAT EMPEROVR

TAMERLAN.

V Vherein are expressed, encounters, skirmishes, battels, sieges, assaults, skalings, taking of cities and
strong places, defended, and assaulted, with diverse Stratagems
of warre, the which this great and Renowned warriour bath
conducted and accomplished, during his raigne of sortie
or sistie yeares: with other instructions for the warre,
which should not be vnknowen of them
that would atraine vnto the knowledge of armes.

Drawen from the auncient Monuments of the Arabians, by Messire lean du Bee, Abbot of Mortimer.

Newly translated out of French into English, for their benefite which are ignorant in that language.

by H. M.



Printed for Willam Ponsonby. 1597.

HE COR BAT BINDER is the term and the bull of the forest the state of the blicis in Strait a town? He will be strong to the strong of and the entered with the content to be a labor. The office and the same of the same of the PERMITTED OF What he is 1841 semistrated a feet and my selection and the little to the first of the little to the the property of the first and description of a the channel area where the Transport and the transport and the transport and the Englishmen of the second of the cell of ath in hip fave 18 Joseph Children the analysis of the state of th in language the state of the st ter introduction red soline villate The Mark and the Contract of the THE REPARE THE WINE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF rachegos bayi ibiyi Qolor Suuri Cilk Torak co en Harris out that her called the Mindell And a report of sibo a militarea. South distribution group in Alexandra Charles of the Walter to the Control of



TO THE FRIENDLY READER.

Ecause this Historie (friendly Reader) was translated at the first, and now at this present imprinted and set foorth for thy only benefit: I thought best to recommend it rather to the Readers correction, then voto any mans particular protection. For as I cannot otherwise thinke, but diverse and sundrie errors are in the translating by me committed, necessary by thee to be corrected: so do l'assure my selfe the Historie is so excellent, as it needeth nor to be protected. For whether is to be considered the man in his honorable vertues, or the matter with her rare and diverse properties, you shall find both the one and the otherable to protect themselues, and euery way satisfie thine expectation. For both the which I will say no more then I find written by the French author, that the Historie is most true, and not deuised, according to the vanities of former ages, but

being as it were buried in a straunge and vnknowen language is reuiued from that obscuritie by his trauailes, and presented vnto the
Reader in his own tongue through my paines.
V Vhereof seeing thou art to reape the fruit, I
doubt not but ye will accept and yeelde mee
thankes for the same. I will not trouble thee
with a vaine commendation of the samous Tamerlan, who being amongest the worthy conquerors, as the sunne with the other starres,
shall in the reading of this Historie shine
vnto thee his owne vertues. Farewell. From my house the xv.
day of October. 1597.





THE HISTORIE OF TAMERLAN.



Auing read fundrie Histories, the which doe attribute as a great want vnto the happie fortune of Tamerlan, not to haue a writer in his dayes, which might have left in writing his Historie vnto posteri-

tie: who furely had reason so to say, if this had bin true. But without any cause did they mone him, insomuch as his Historie is very famous amough the Turks and Ara- The History of bians, his conquests very largely discoursed, and many Tamerlan faof his worthy and notable fayings collected, with an in- the Tirker and finite number of noble deedes left vnto the memoriall Arabians, of posteritie, having bene no lesse accompanied with fuch good hap, than was Achilles. Very true it is, that he had not an Homer, but a great and worthy person, learned as well in naturall Philosophy, as in Astrology, who was in the time of this Prince, a companion and familiar of his conquests, named Albacen, an Arabian Albacen, by birth, making profession of Mahomets religion, not according to the fond and vaine follies of the Turkes: but for want of Christian instruction, he worshipped one onely God, the author of nature, & maker both of Heaven and Earth (the which Mahomet taught as he Mahomet. had learned in the Schoole of the Christians) meaning to be contrary vnto the Heathen, who did allow of fundry Goddes. This Author then being fallen into my hands, in my voyage into the East Countrey, I caused

The Franke tongue amogst the Turkes.

the same to be interpreted vnto meby an Arabian, who did speake Frank (as they terme it) that is to fay, Italian, & some time I spent, in affociating my selfe so with this man, who commended greatly vnto me the eloquence & gravity of this author, wodering at his digreffions,& entring againe into his matter fo well to the purpose. It grieued me much that I had not the perfection of this language, to be a helpe vnto the riches of this History, for to deliuer it vnto my Nation with some grace: but I tooke therof as much as I could in his language, which was corrupted, as is the Franktongue (to they terme it) which is a kind of Italian, mingled with Slauon, Greek, & Spanish, tongs very como at Costantinople, with the Arabian & Turkish tongs: so as I could not gather but only the truth thereof & not the drifts & gravity of the declaration, wherein the author had collected it for posterity, (& as he said) by the comandemet of the Prince, who was a'louer of learning, & excellent in the knowledge of Astrology & dininity, as the custome of those Nations is to ioine the ordinarily together, studying vpon the vertue of names, & of the turning of letters, eue in their placing, writing the vnderneth starres, whereof they make sentences, by meanes whereof they wrought miraculously in the things of nature. This is that Zoroaftrien & Bactrien science, that of Balaa, & some others in my opinio, which hath fucceeded vnto fo many Arabian Astrologians. Now then this Prince was endued with fuch knowledg, as made him admired of the people where he comaded, who are for the most part great woderers, infomuch as this canfed him to be accounted

The Tartarians strange kind of Astro-

logic.

Tamerlan his

learning.

a Prince accopanied with the diujne vertue, conidering Italian fables the instice he vsed in all his actios. This hath proceeded written of Italians have writte foolish things energy.

thereof.

thereof, as of certain kinds of Tents which he canfed to be pitched, whe he befreged any city; one white, fignifiing peace, it yelding vnto his mercy; another red, fignifying cruelty to follow; and the third blacke, fignifying mourning to enfue. But I find not this in our Author, & Ibeleeve the to be fables, as that of Romans, for the affaires of the war are not hadled in this maner, & we find that he was very courteous: onely he defired to abbase Tamerian rethe pride of that Turkish Emperor, called Basazet, the to the good, and thunder of heaven, & would tread upon his head, imita-furion to the ting therin the Divinity, which pulleth down the proud bad. & raiseth vp the humble. Therfore in a word, I say that which our Historiographers report of him, is very litle after this Author. This is the occasio therfore that I defiring to write, in this folitarines which I have chosen, seing the cotinuace of the mileries wherinto I haue often thrust my selfe with the hazard of my life, as I am bound for my king & countrey; where having received many wounds, by the fauor of my king, I have foughtagaine the private life, which I had left that I might not be seene in idlenesse at such time as men of worth were busied in facrificing their lives for preservatio of their countrey. Now the that I may keepe my felf fro writing any thing of these times, for to say true, it engendreth hatred in many minds, & especially the desire to be flattered, & they which cannot do it, are they not comaded to keepe filence? I must forbeare to collect that which fome men of worth having both seene & endured, doe leaue, as a monumet of our follies vnto posterity, which should rather in my opinion be buried, then brought to light, for they be instructions to kindle mens minds for the trouble of their countries, finding therin colours for dities arising destruction of the same. Do you not thinke that the Hi-from the Historie of the Romaine civill warres, hath beene the fories of civil

occasion of the ouerthrow of many common-wealths? and do not you beleeve, that of the Grecians being read by Cefar, did harme, by lyfting vp his courage, and making him hope for high matters (as those of Marius and Silla) to fet Rome on fire, and their owne Countrie in bloud, faying most truely, (and they of this age shall pardon me) that man is without love, vnworthy of fire and water, who causeth and loueth civill warres. We must needs blame them in recyting those, and take from them the hope of obtayning thereby glorie of the posteritie, but much rather blame & dishonor. What was the cause that parricide was not forbidden by a law written? because this were to instruct that it might be done. Our countrie is another mother, shall we recite vnto posterity the praise of the parricide, which they comit against her the true mother? For this occasion therfore I hold my peace, & bury in my felf as much as I may, the cospiracies which they had made against their king, City, fellow-citizen, the hallowed altars, & against all both divine and humane right. I will now declare vnto you with my Arabian, who this great Prince Tamerlan was. He was then of the bloud of the Tartarian Emperors, and his father Og had for his portion the countrey of Sachetay, wherof he was Lord. This countrey lying betweene the North & the East, is the ancient country of Parthia, vpon the coast of the Zogdians, & the chiefest citie of his estate was Samercand situated upon the river of Isfarle. Some of our Historiographers would needs have him to be the sonne of a shepheard; but this haue they faid, not knowing at all the custome of their countrie, where the principall revenue of the kings and nobles confisteth in cattell, despising gold and silver but making great reckoning of fuch riches, wherin they

abound

The offpring and flocke of Tamerlan.

The customes and revenues of the Tartarian kings, of Tamerlan.

aboud in all forts: this is the occasio wherfore some call the shepheards, & say also that this Prince desceded fro the. So his father Og was Prince of Sachetay, abouding in fuch kind of wealth. And being come vnto the age of fifteen yeares, his father being already old, delivered vp. vnto him the governmet of his kingdome, with the comandemet ouer al his men of war. His father Og being The folitarie given vnto peace, withdrue himfelf vnto a folitarie life, to ferue God. for to serve God, and end the rest of his dayes in quiet. He gaue vnto his fon Tamerlan (which fignifieth hea- Tamerlans uenlie grace in their tongue) two sufficient personages for to guide and affift him in the government of his estate: the one was called Odmar, and the other Aly, per-odmar & Aly fons in great dignitie and credit with his father, whom appointed to this Prince did greatlie honour as long as they lived, & in the governeven after their death hee did often make mention of mer tof his them before his feruants, commending their feruices father og. performed;a matter of no smal force for the mightie to Note. makethem wel serued, not to forget their seruants ene after their death. This acknowledging doth greatlie allure men, as the forgetfulnesse thereof doth gricue the for the present time, and cooleth the desire they have to serue. This Prince was wont to weare on his hand the rings of his two fernants, and was wont to fay, that when he beheld these, he did call to his remembrance two precepts, which he had received of them; and this did he the better to retain them in memorie against he should minister iustice. Now this Prince was wel instructed in the Arabian learning, and exercised himselfe Tamerlan bis much therein, and at fuch time as they thought him to few and be either in the Bathes, wherein they are very curious in The delicacies that countrie, being their chiefest delicacies, he was in of Tartaria. the contemplacion and studie of heauely things, with- contemplacion.

Maieffie in his eyes.

out omitting anie thing notwithstanding that belonged to the government of his estate, wherin he said his professed Demon did oftentimes especiallie direct him, accounting onely his estate prosperous when he had the heaues favorable. This Prince had within his eyes fuch deuine beautie, being full of fuch maiefty, that one could hardly endure the fight of them without clofing of their eies, & they which talked with him, and did ofte behold him, became dumb, infomuch as he abstained with a certain modesty & comelinesse to look vpon him that discoursed vnto him. All the rest of his visage was courteous and well proportioned: he had but little haire on his chin: he did weare his haire long & curled. contrary to the custome of his country, who are shaued on their heads, having the same alwaies couered, but he

The cuftom of the Lartarias.

T'amerlan and why:

The discription of Lamerlan.

contrariwise was alwaies in a maner bare-headed, and greatly esteemed of his haire: therfore one of his familiars demanding of him wherfore he did not shaue his haire like other men, he faid vnto him, My fried, I neuer n ore long hair told it vinto any body, but (faid he) the affection I know thou bearest vnto my service, cannot deny it thee. My mother came of the race of salon, for a mark wherof the aduifed me to honor long haire. This was the caufe that made him respected of his men of armes, and the most part of the did beleeve there was some vertue in those haires, or rather some fatal destiny, the which many did beleene to be fo; & verily they were of a duskie colour drawing towards a violet, the most beautifull that anie eye could behold. His flature was of the middle fort, fomwhat narrow in his shoulders , he had a faire leg & strong, the stregth of his body was such as no body did furpasse, & often on the festival daies he made rriall of his firegth with the most strong: & this he did with such grace & humanity, that he who he ouercame held himof Tamerlan.

self therin most happy, although it be a disgrace amogst the Tartarias to be thrown to the ground in wraftling. Now as he was martial & defirous of glory: the first war that he attepted was against the Moscouit, who came & Tamerlan his spoiled a citie which had put it self into his protectio, & first war ahad entred also into his countrie, & being retired, pro- against the claimed open war against him, gane him battaile neer to the river Mascha, although the Moscouit had a great army, which he had gathered together long before. On the other fide, the Prince determining to refift him, afsembled all his forces, & those of his allies Tamerlans; & first, he made appeare vnto his soldiers the stoutnesse of his courage; for this day he perfourmed the office both of a fouldier & Emperour jointly together. Now the place of fight being discomodious for vs by reason of a litle hil which the Moscouits had rake, wheron they had placed some 6000.me on foot, who with an infinit nuber of arrowes hoped to ouercome the that went to the battaile, who were constrained to passe by that place. Now he being aduertised that the Moscouit would not come to the battail, but only meant to shew himself, & after that to retire 20. leagues, as they are accustomed to do:he being desirous to end this war by a battail, did adjudge, beyond the aduise of his Counsell, that the eenemy wold not fight, vnlefle by affaulting this mountaine, he were vrged therunto against his wil, or els lose those 6000 men which were there placed. Then he co- A Stratagem. maded 20000 men of his army, led by Aly (Colonel of the footmen) to set vpon them. Now by this aduise he brought to passe two effects: the one whereof was, that he kepthishorfmen from being injured by the arrowes of the Moscouites; the other was to compet them vnto the fight, in case they would not otherwise come

ed two houres, the armies nothing at al medling there-

in but yet every one did encourage their fouldiours,&

exhort them vnto the battaile. The order of Tamer-

lanes was this; that is, he caused all his armie to be de-

uided into squadrons, each confisting of fixe thousand

horse,

The

Mai bise;

The

tire

7'an

n eri

The order of Tamerlanes battaile.

Tamerlan.

horse, except his own, which was often thousand, so as he made eighteen fquadrons, his owne being reckened which made nineteene. The Auantguard was condu-&edby Odmar who led nine squadrons, flanked with 40. thousand men on foot, deuided both on the right and left fides, who should shoot an infinite number of arrowes. The battaile was conducted by Tamerlan, who led ten squadrons, his owne being therein closed, and 50, thousand footmen, the best and choisest fouldiers of his whole armie. Prince Thanais, a kinfman vnto the Prince, led the Arere-ward, with fortie thousand footmen, and fixe squadrons: hee had some three thoufand horse aduenturers, whome they call Oliagues in their tongue, the same which we tearme the forlorne

hope.

te

at

4,

te

r-

d

1,

10

n

1.

re

id

d

r-

id

ts

id

d

2m

Te

a-

m

0ed

C7

11-C-

8

7e-

14 le,

The Moscouite did not observe that order, but did fight by double ranks with Launces, and there was a space to help themselves therein, and to breake them, notwithstanding thosenations doe not breake them at all, and they feemed to be a greater number then wee, making a great noise. The Auantguard of the Mosco-Theorder of uites was fullie twentie five thousand horse. The Polo-battaile, nians and Hungarians were in the Auauntguard, the which was led by the Moscouits sonne, whom they call the Prince of Ruffia: the battaile confisted of 40. thoufand horse, wherein was the king of Moscouie with manie of his Lords, and all the forces of his Allies, the Arere-ward was a great squadron squared with ten thoufand horse; the footmen of the Moscouit were between the Battaile & the Arere-ward. Then our Prince feeing Tamerlan his our armie paffe douer, turned himlelf towards his foul- freech mobis diers, & began in this fort to speake vnto them: It is not fouldiers, being for riches (my companios) nor forthe enlarging of the saile array.

limits of my empire, that I doc fight this day with your affiftance, but it is for a thing more excellet, feeing the fame is to purchase glory & honor vnto the Parthianation. The fame which was in old time the bouds of the glory of the Roma name, who could never conquer it, nor plant their Trophees therein. Let vs not then gine place vito the glory of our auncesters, and make manifest this day voto me, the faithfulnesse that is in you. & let the same be accompanied with your courage, for your king is not accustomed to retire without victory. I have caused you to passe ouer this river, for the trust I haue in the force of your arms: let vs rather dy the repas it without carying a laurel garlad on our head. Whilest this passed thus, the Parthia foldiers led by Aly had won the mourain, which was not without great fight: but the victory fel on our fide, which gaue great hope vnto our army of more happy successe. This made the Moscouits to acknowledge the fault they had made, the which was wel taken hold of by vs: fo the Prince gaue the figne of battaile, marching forward all along the mountaine which his fouldiers had wonne, enflamed with their vi. Ctory to begin the fight. And he placed 6000 fresh foldiers vpon this mountain to fauor his armie. At this instant the Moscouite gaue the signe of battaile, and aduanced forward. Then the Prince Tamerlan willed his Moscowite and men likewise to come forward: and sent his commandement therof vnto Odmar, who returned answer, that feing the Mosconit did with fuch heat seek to come unto the fight, he would fuffer him to come vato him, and would attend his comming refolutely in the place of battail. Now Odmar alone could by his authority bridle the boldnes of this yong Prince, who defired to go forward, & maintain in the meane time, like an old foldier. his advantage, which was of no final waight for the vi-

Battaile beemsen the Tammlan.

Ctory, the place being of greater advantage for the enemies, for in affaulting the we loft the force of the fight. & we had also the wind & Sun in our eyes, which raised a great dust made by our horses, which kept the Moscouits fro beholding the efect of their foldiers in the fight that either as they won or lost they might be succored; So the fight was begun by the Moscouites, who strongly with althe fury that was possible charged Odmar, who stiffy resisted all this forcible violence, but not without the loffe of many of his men, and himfelf thrown to the ground, al his horse also broken, was fain to retire himfelfe vnto the left wing of his footmen, where he was again mounted on horleback, whereupon reuniting his men together, whilest the Moscouite did fight with the maine battaile, conducted by the Emperour Tamerlan, he renued with those whom he had so vnited together a new charge, setting ypon the flank of the Moscouits. which did greatly impaire their strength. The fight endured 4.or 5. houres; infomuch as the heaps of men and horsewere so many defences against the blowes of the arrowes shot by the Parthia footmen & by those of the Moscouites. Now the Moscouite horsmen had pierced the maine battaile, the Hungarias fighting so resolutely as the Prince remained seuered with 3000, horse only, & after the Parthian maner began to fight in retiring: wherupon the Moscouite thought he had won the battaile; then, whe he being reunited vnto his Arier-ward, led by the Prince of Tanais, who had gathered together 14000. horse, and almost all the footmen, it behoued the Moscouite to retire backe, notwithstanding before that he made a strong resistace; but at the length multitude & skil ouercam the force &valor of the Mofcouites, the victorie bending to the Parthians side, the which they did pursue hotly. Tamerlan was hurt on

The owert mon of the \$10,00-

the forehead vpon the side of the left eye. and had two horses flainevader him in the fight; the Moscouite falling into the hands of a private fouldiour, as a prifoner. being not known, faced himfelf (his armie being whollie ouerthrowne, and divers Muscouite Lords taken prifoners) and retired himselfe with nine or ten thousand horse in order: manie of their sootmen faued theselues by the benefit of the night. The place of their retiring was about ten leagues from our armie, and he passed ouer a river, where he reunited together his men during the night. The least losse he had was of his footme, who tooke not the course of his horsmen, but rather as soon as they perceived the victorie encline to the enemie, they retired themselves all along the moutains for their better aduantage: a thing which greatlie fauoured the Moscouits. Tamerlan employed himself in giving God thanks for this victorie, after he had purfued the enemy three leagues; the next day he reviewed his armie, and found that he had lost of his side for his part betweene feuen an eight thousand horsmen, and betweene three and foure thousand footmen. The Moscouite lost some feuen and twentie thousand footmen, and between fifteene and fixteene-thousand horsmen. This same day was Odmar the safegard of his Prince; for it is not to be doubted, had not the hindrance bene he gaue, when the Moscouits affaulted Tamerian, setting upon him with all their forces together, but that they had bene able to ouerthrow the Prince of Thanais, and the Emperour who was reunited vnto him. By the euent of this Battaile we may learne how much aduantage he hath, who attendeth the comming of his enemie with a relolute mind in the field which he hath chosen for the battaile, having first caused the same to be well viewed by his

The thakeful.

messe of Ta
messen vnto

God for his vi
elorie

A good advertisment for Generals.

his men, and especially by his Captaines. Secondly, the hurt that commeth in not observing the dust which the wind raiseth. Thirdly, that the Arier-ward well led, is the occasion of the victorie, and oftentimes the preservation of the Prince. Fourthly, how necessarie it is to have the chiefest strength of the battaile in going to assault the enemie. Now our Tamerlan afterhe had given thanks vnto God, caused a view to be made of his Armie, buried the dead, both his owne, and of his enemie, acknowledged the deferts of his foldiours, yeelding vnto them fuch houour as they had deserved. In this battaile he lost Hally, who was slaine by the blow of an arrow, after he had forced the moutaine, in going to the battaile, being generall of all his footme. This Prince was greatly grieuedtherwith, caufing his bodie alwaies to be laide in his tent vntil his returne vnto Samarcand, where he caused him to be buried verie honourably: hee was the beginning of the done to Hally greatnesse to Samercand, and of the fame of his name, after budeath by making of a stately tombe for Hally. The Prince did for good for flacke no time after so great a victorie: for having gi- by him in his uen fuch order as was necessarie to a great armie. (I wil life. not forget to declare, that when as this Prince did behold so many thousands of men lie dead on the ground where the battaile was fought, he turned himselfe vnto one of his familiars, lamenting the condicion of them who command ouer Armies, & commending the profession of the Emperour his father, he counted him happie, for that hee had fought rest, acknowledging Anotable fayhumaine miserie, the which in destroying his owne ing of Tamer. kind, procured his glorie. That for his part fuch tokens lan for making of victory were forrowful eue vnto his hart.) He fet forward, and came into the borders of the Moscouite, all

uice performed

the courty being aftonished, & enery one flying before

Embassadors from the Moscourt to treat of peace with Tamerlan

his army, the Moscouite had retired himselfe upon the loffe of the battaile, & had likewife caused al his footme to retire, making a thewe as though he had not loft his courage, & because he had reunited 30000. of his horsmen together, he bragged to trie very shortly his fortune againe. But for all this feeing his victorious enemy come and enter into his country, he thought he should haue to do with a mighty enemy: and having called together his principal Captaines, he passed ouer the river. called Nifort, & taking their counsell, he did resolue for the preservation of his subjectes to send vnto the Conquerour, and once to make trial of his mercie, as he had already of his forces, being informed by the prisoners of the noble mind and mildnesse the which this Prince vouchsafed vnto them, he determined to send Embasfadors to treat with him, and to affay for to amend that which had bene ill done. The Embassadors being arriued, he received curteouslie, bewailing in a maner the fortune of their maister, rather then vaunting and exalting himself for the victorie; and as it were more modest then the conquered, he asked them how the Moscouit did, & for what cause they came vnto him. They gaue him to vnderstand, that they had in charge from their Prince to treat with him, desiring the abstinence of armes, and that they were ready to performe vnto him all things reasonable: they befeeched him moreouer to vie victorie as a thing which was the gift of Fortune, and might at another time change, calling vnto mind the effate of humane things, which are vnftable. Prince Tamerlan made them answer, that he had taken armes for the preservation of his confederates and subjects, from the injurie done yno them by the Moscouite,

uite: and this was the cause of thevictorie, for that hee had iustlie enterprised the same. That hee referred the victorie vnto the God of Battailes, & not vnto his own strength, or forces of his fouldiers, and for these reasons he was not therby more insolent: for it was the custome of the Parthians, retaining the same from the Anstable fay. glorie of their ancesters, that in adversitie their coura-ing of Tamerges doe nothing at all faile them, and that prosperitie lan. likewise doth in no fort blind the so far , that they shuld nor be mindful of iustice as well in good as bad fortune. That it was just they should satisfy the victor, & should Articles of an promise not to enterprise any more the troubling of greement and his allies, then should they have peace with his armes. betweeneshe He also required that they should become tributaries Moscouite of ahundred thousand Duckats, and should pay all the charges of the warre, amounting vnto the sum of three hundred thousand Duckats, he then would send back again all the prisoners, & withdraw his armies that for security hereof they shuld give him pledges, which should be changed euery yeare; vnto all which they agreed. So was this warre ended to his contentment, returning with glorie vnto the Prince his father, in whose countenance no bodie could perceiue any ioy for his sonnes prosperitie, as hee whom the care of heaven had so rauished, that hee no longer set his minde on earthly things. Now Tamerlan was received into all his countries with much honour and triumph; the great Cham of Tartaria, brother vnto his father, sent prefentes to gratifie him, making offer vnto him of his daughter in marriage, and that in marrying of her he would cause him to bee acknowledged as Emperour throughout all his kingdomes, as his next heire, himfelfe being nowe old, and out of all hope to have anie

more children. Hereupon he presently tooke his iorney towards him, being in the citie of Quauicay, where he was received with all kind of triumph and magnificece; there did he shew himselfe brave in all maner of gallant shewes and combats, as well in iest as in earnest. And as these nations are full of vanitie, and desirous to make shew of their strength & agility, Tamerlan caried away the prize therein, whether it were in shooting neere with his bowe, or in changing horses in the middest of the courses, or in breaking an yron in running at the

The Tartari-

Tamerlan hin mariage with the great Chas daughter.

The situation of the city of Samercand.

Presents from the Moscouit onto Tamerla

the courses, or in breaking an yron in running at the Quintaine; he made euery one wonder at his dexterity, and was crowned the fixt day after his comming thither with the joyfull confent of all the fubicats of the Emperour his vnkle, and of all the Court. After thathe maried the Emperours daughter, desiring first to bee crowned before the marriage, to the intent that none should think that the Crown came vnto him by means of her, but by succession, the daughters not at all succeeding into Empires. It was also to assure his estate, & having remained in that place by the space of two moneths, he returned from thence with his wife to Samercand, in which citie he delighted greatly to remaine. because the situation thereof was verie faire; and for that the citie is accompanied with a faire river, which causeth great trafique, and maketh it richer then any citie within that countrey. As he abode there the Mofcouite fent to visit him with many presents of faire horfes, & many excellet furres, the which did greatly content him, for he had received newes that the Moscouite did arme himselfe, the which was true, but it was against the Polonians, and other of his neighbors. Who made their repaire vinto him for his affiftance, earnestly defiring his aidswhich he would not dosmaking answer vnto

vnto them, that he had given vnto the Moscouice the dearest thing he had in the world, which was his faith. worthis an-Manie notwithstanding of the Court corrupted by the swere voto the Embassadors of the king of Polonia, vsed perswasions Polonians, who to mooue him to fauour the Polonians, declaring vn- him against the to him, that it was a Maxime, that it behooved him Moscowite. not to sufferhis neighbour to waxe too strong, especiallie of folmighty a kingdome as was Polonia; and that this was the means to make the Tartarians and Parthians terrible vnto the Moscouites. That it was necessary at the beginning to oppose himselfe against such greatnes, the which being suffered to increase, would in the end prooue hurtfull vnto vs, and then would it be verie hard to ouerthrow the same. The Prince answered, that at what time soeuer the Moscouit would not performe that which he had promised vnto him, he had sufficient means to punish him, seeing he had alreadie ouercome him with the Parthians, which was but a small province within Tartaria, and that at this day being increased to fo great an estate as the whole Empire of the Tartarians, he had occasion to feare him the lesse; he hoped that his of-spring would also adde more Empires if it did maintaine equity; that in the meane time the Mofcouite should breake his forces in one enterprise, hee would likewise bring to passe his, wherein he should iustlie get honour, and augment the limits of his reputacion. That the peace betweene him and the Moscouite was notoriouslie knowne vnto all his neighbours, the breach whereof should not proceed of his part, and that it was beneficiall both for him and his subjectes: Tamerlan a that God doth punish those who vniustlie enterprise lover of suffice warre against their neighbours; that this hath bene the occasion of the greatnes of our house, that his ancesters

A notable saying of Tamtrlan.

haucalwayes had this iustice before their eyes, in as much as they have never enterprifed warre but in their owne defence, notwithstanding it is 300. yeares since they knew what it was to have fortune cotrary vnto the, and that he beleeved certainly that proceeded fro that Iustice which the God of hostes observed towards his that if he were defirous of warre, and therby to get honour and reputation, he had many things to demaund of his neighbours, who during the raigne of his father, which fought onely heaven and neglected the earth, desirous of peace, hath permitted the which he might iustly redemaund, and vpon refusal, by armes make way vnto the liberty of his subjects, tyramifed vnder vnlawfull Lords. Odmar seemed greatly to allow of the Princes reasons, although hee had bene one of the first which entred into this colideration to feare the greatnesse of the Moscouite; and he wondered at the maner he vsed in counterpeyling so vprightly in equal ballances inflice with his magnanimitie; the which notwithstanding was not transported beyond the course of equitie, what reasons soeuer diverse wise men of his Councel declared, concerning the ancient enmitie betweene the Moscouits and Parthians, especially for the controuersie in religion: but all this was disanulled, Odmar allowing the purpose of the Prince, the which he alone knew, & the others speaking only as old Coufellers; relying upon the anciet maximes by the which are maintained and affured the greatnesse of Monarchies. For Odmar alone was called by him at fuch time as the great Cham his vokle did impart voto him his affaires: and amongst other matters, he propounded vnto him the enterprise of China, promising him affistance and aid, and giving him to vnderstand how necessarie it was to undertake this war for the better affuring of his

estate, seeing the king of China had much gone beyod his ancient bounds. So as our Prince had this journey in his mind, and prepared himselfe therunto, he had not otherwise refused their counsell, and the wife opinions they propounded vnto him, being alwayes obedient vnto reason and not to any other passion, and then especially when the question was of warre, & for the good of his affaires, a thing for which he was as much to be comeded, as for any other vertue what foeuers for by others he was esteemed strong, couragious & stout, but by this The comment here metioned, he was accouted wife & vertuous, which merlandey. maketh kings to be honored & admired wherof he that ing reason. is the owner, is Lord of one of the greatest Empires that men can obtaine; for the wife man onely hath the dominion thereof. And what availeth it (I pray you) to conquer abroad, when as home-matters are miserablie subjected under the fery of our foolish passions is it not very hard to comand another, when thou commandest not thy selfe, thou being the saue of thy follies, which do break thee with all their force against the moderate rock of wisdom, which houereth about thee, mocking at all that thou doest without her? Salomon also the king of Israel praied for it, so did our Prince often: this was the praier he most commonly made vnto God, and for ramerlan this reason he honored greatly the counsel of the wife, prayed for and respected not their pouerty, & some wondered that wildom into he having knowledge of a wife man, would fend for him vnto his Court, and conferring familiarly with Aworthy cuhim, would sayunto him: My friend, I pray thee let frome of Tame bestow part of my goods vpon thee, and doe thou impart some of thy wisedome with mee. Hee was wont to say, they presented him with golde and silver, ing of Tamerwith precious stones, with faire and rich moueables, lan.

CANCES CONCESCONO

B 4

where he abounded: but that he found fewe which did beautifie his mind with good precepts & instructions, wherwith to gouerne so manie fundry people whome Godhad subiected under the obedience of his scepter. He had in his Court a Christian whom he loued much, and euerie one greatlie respected, named Axalla, a Geneuois by birth, brought vp from his youth about his person. This man principally did stir him vp vnto great enterprises, and notwithstanding his religion, hee trusted him. Now he had all religion in reuerence, so as it did worship one onelie God, creator of all things. He often said, that the greatnes of Divinitie colisted in the fundry kindes of people which are vnder the coape of heaue, who ferued the same diverslie, nourishing it self with diversitie, as the nature was divers where it had printed his image, God remaining notwithstanding one in his essence, not receiving therin any diversitie. This was the reason that mooued him to permit and graunt the vse of all religions within the Countries of his obedience, alwayes prouided (as I faid before) that they worshipped one onely God, detesting the idolatrous and strange goddes, in so much as he regarded not the diversitie in religion, if they were able to serue him soo as this Christian attained vnto great honors and dignities neere vnto him, as hereafter you

Now to returne from my digression: Our Prince was desirous of warres, knowing that he could verie hardly maintaine his owne estate and so manie servantes, whose singers would tickle if they were not employed in making of warres. So he determined to make warre with the king of China (who is called the Lord of the world, & child of the sum) which was no small enterprise.

But

The Author
(aith that this;
may be praifed
in a Pagan &
infidel, but not
in a Christian
Prince.

shall heare.

But before he would begin the same, he sent vnto the faid king of China, for to demand right for some coun- vnto the king tries (which they cal Hordas) abiding places, & townes, of China from or rather countries fir for the feeding of cattell, the which this Prince of China had vsurped long before, and even the passages of a river called Tachij, which is beyond his limits, which are walles (the which are be- A wall builded tween the kingdomes of the great Cham and of our Ta- by the king of merlan) builded of purpose by this king of China to de- fend bis coun. fend him from the roades of the Tartarians and forces troy from the of our Prince, so as this was begunne with the aduise of roades of the the great Cham, and for his benefite as well as for the Princes. Therefore to accomplish his enterprise, in the meane time that he attended for the returne of his Emballadors, he cauled his forces to come forwards from all parts, appointing vnto them for the place of meeting his owne at the Horda of Baschir, where all his armie assembled : and other ayding troopes of the great Cham in the deferts of Ergimul at a certaine day, in which place he should io yne with all his armie. The armie of the great Cham confisted of two hundred thoufand fighting men, wherein were all the braue men of his Court, who were accustomed vnto the warres, the Emperor which then raigned, & was old, having greatly increased his limits, and conquered a great countrey, so as these men were well trained up in the warres, and accustomed vnto trauaile and paines. Now then the Embassadors which were sent, returne and informe the Prince of the will of this proud king of the world, this A proud anking of China (who was named fo) who puffed vp with fivere of the vaine glorie, was aftonished how any durst denounce returned or to warre against him, making this proud answer, that Tamerlan should content himselfe that he had left him dors

Tamerlan.

Chinato de-

bing of China Tamerlan by his Emballa-

that which he might have taken from him, and that his armes and forces were of another fort then those of whom he published the victory, to bring thereby terror vpon his neighbours. This answere being heard, our Prince marched directly vnto the armie, and gaue order for the conueyance of victuals from all partes, fent to hasten forwarde his consederates, emparted the answere ynto the Emperour by Embassadours dispatched from him, caused the boldnesse of the king of China to be published, to make manifest vnto all the world the iustnesse of his cause. Before his departure he went to take leaue of his father, who endued with a fingular & fatherly affection, said he should never fee him again, failer and the and that he hastened vnto his last rest, and having made folemne praiers ouer the Prince his sonne for his prosperitie, kissing him a thousand times, drew off his Imperiallring, and gaue it vnto him, not asking whither his journey tended: and calling Odmar, he bad him farewell, recomeding his faithfulnes vnto his fon. This was done with a grauity, wherof the grace was more diuine

Akind parting betwenethe Conne.

The cuftome of the Parthian kings to carrie their a jues with them vnto the warre.

Samay made governour of Sachetay in Tamerlans Aufence.

The courteons nature of Tamerlan towardshisbriners mp.

then humaine: then he departed and drew towards Samarcand, where the Empresse his wife remained; whom he carried with him as is the custome of that Nation,& after he had (being religious) visited the Tombe of his feruant Hally, he caused his soule three dayes to be praied for, according to the rites of his law: whereupon he presently departed, having taken order for the well gouerning of his kingdome in his absence, committing the charge thereof vnto Samay, a man well practifed in affaires, & he who had the charge of our Prince in his youth: for I must needes say this by the way, that our Prince had alwayes a naturall inclination towards thosewhich had brought him vp in vertue, shewing vnto them

them in a manner the same honor, as if he were yet vnder their gouernment: and this he did thorough a gentlenesse of nature which was in him, that made him beloued more then I am able to expresse vnto you. So Tamerlan his then he marched forward in the middest of his armie, Armie marwhich confisted but of fiftie thousand horse, and one the king of hundred thousand men on foote, relying principally china. on the forces of the great Cham his vncle; who aboue all defired this warre: he did not forget to give in charge that the rest of his forces should be readievpon the first commandement as soone as he should be joyned with the forces of the great Cham, and marching forwardes he had stayed by the way, by reason of some distemperature which had surprised him thorough changing of the ayre as the Philitions affirmed. But yet notwithstanding the forces which Catiles Captaine of the armie of the great Cham conducted, went daily forwards. Now the newes was spredde into an infinite number of places of his distemperature, yet did he not neglect to fend vnto the great Cham, and often aduertise him of the estate of his health, to the end the same should not cause any alteration, the which he did fore-see by reason of his preferment vnto this Empire by the great Cham his vncle: and he was in doubt of a certaine Lord named Calix, who was discontented therewith, and had not as yet neither gratified nor acknowledged him as all the other subjectes had done, and they reported thereof diverfely vnto him; but this Prince vnto whom gentlenesse being naturall, was alwayes of opinion, that it would not bee convenient for him to disturbe the quiet of the kingdome which was given him, during the life of his vncle, who defired it as old age doth naturally:

notwithstanding some report that vpon pollicie hee fuffered this warre to be moved, wheras he might have remedied the same, making it as a meanes to win the hearts of his new subjects, who liked well of him alreadie, and also to make himselfe to be feared of those that heaped vp conspiracies against his promoting vnto the new Empire. For kingdomes are for the most part ob-

Tamerlan his policie to cut off the braches of sedition.

The confiracy of Calin 4gainst Tamerlan in his abfence.

tained, and likwise preserved by the good-will gotten in well commaunding men of warre: it produced also another effect, which was, that they who were fedicious, wasted of theselues, or else became his affectioned feruants by the ordinary feruice in the warres, and by this meanes drew them out of their countrey. Now cocerning his delay it was by fundry diverfly interpreted; fome faid that he had bene aduertised of some vproare to be attempted, when he should be farre seuered from thence, and had passed ouer the mountains of Pasanfu, and that Calix staied vpon nothing else, in so much as the companies of the great Cham were gone forwards, euen beyond the mountaines, hauing passed the river of Meau, and were encamped at Bouprou, the which Calix vnderstanding, thought he shold have the means to worke his enterprise. Thereupon having assembled great store of his most faithful followers, he tooke counfell with them, that this was the meanes to ouerthrow the purposes of Zachetay, who would raigne ouer, and bring them vnder his Empire: and that feeing their Prince had bene so badly minded as to doe the same of his owne minde without calling of them which had interest in that election, that now was the time to assure their libertie, which was in doubt to be loft, and caused also a rumor to be spread of the sicknesse of this Prince, that the great Cham was old, the greatest part of his forces

forces farre feparated from him, that they should soone attaine vnto that they defired: that his enterprise herein was fo affured; that to foone as his armie wes affembled, he would shew himselfe before Catay, he was certaine that presently there wold be a change in his fauor; that his father had commaunded there; that it is long fince he knew the affection of this people, which inclined vnto him; that they had not as yet feene their newe Prince; that they would eafily beleeve whatfoever he declared vnto them; that the Zachetay was farre seuered from them; that they had to do with a great enemie, to whom also he had fent Embassadors to advertise him of his practife; that he was affured his enterprise would haue happie successe; that they would foorthwith difpatch a messenger vnto the great Cham their Prince, to An old proaffure him that they bent not their forces against him, tome of all rebut were his faithfull and obedient subiects: but they armed themselues, because they would not be gouerned by the Parthians their auncient enemies (for thefe Nations hate one another how neere neighbours fo euer they be, as doth the Spaniard and the Portugall, the English men and the Scot) that they knew this Prince, in respect of his great age, having no posteritie was desirous of quiet rest, and desired nothing more then to end his dayes in peace, they would permit him fo to do without altering any thing in the fame; that they hope the Parthians are fo badly entertained by the king of China, that in stead of setting vpon them they shall thinke themselves happie if they may be suffered to enioy peace; that they will march forward towards them at the straites of Tenduict to hinder their returne. The propositions of Calix were great and well practifed: for it was a yeare fince he had won the peoples good will,

and he heaped together whatfocuer was necessarie for his insurrection: but this was done secretly, notwithstanding diverse had given advertisement thereof vnto the Prince Tamerlan: but he despised that practife, or at the least made a shewe so to doe. Yet notwithstanding doe I knowe, that he was not so sicke at Cachobache where he remayned verie neare a moneth, that he had not in his vnderstanding (the which he wifely dissembled) the reuolt which Calix practised in his new estate; that he delayed but onely to vnderstand the certainty of the euents . And I have often heardhim fay, that if it had not beene for feare of offending the great Cham his vncle, he had helped the same at the very beginning, without fuffering the same to be set on foote: this was the cause that this Prince made so long abode. The Tartarians which were brought vnto him by Calibes, were vexed for having received newes of the preparations made by the king of China; they complayned that oportunitie and season passed away, so desirous were they to manifest vnto their new Prince their courages, and this was their dayly talke : but some matter of importance happened, and a great alteration was found in the Princes disposition, who was forward and diligent for executing of that speedily which he had with ripe deliberation resoluted of. The which maketh mee beleeue that he had very good aduertisement, and that he waited the oportunitie. Now he gane order for matters behind him, to the end that no newes might be spread of his armie: but rather that they should thinke that hee had passed the mountaine, and had vppon his necke the armie of the king of China, which was betweene the mountaines & him: thus Calix thought greatly to trouble him, when he

he rose in armes against him, and did thinke that he had already assaulted the wall which the king of China had made against the Tartarians. But Calix was thrust forwardrather with a defire of ruling, then beginning the fame with any wisedome, making too great hast: & as his enterprise was craftily coducted, fo was it cunningly discouered, and all fit remedies prepared therefore whenfoeuer the same should happen. As soone then as the Prince was aduertised of the pretences of Calix thus discouered, he marched one dayes journey forward, to the end he might approch vnto Calibes, and impart the fame vnto him, & affembling all his followers & counfell together, he discoursed vnto them in this manner: I nothing doubt but that all of you wil aduise me to de- Tamelan his fift from this enterprise, confidering the armies which his foulders be raifed up within the hart of that courrey, where you ponthe conall defire I should raigne, & where with the full confent spiracie of of all the chiefest servants of the Emperour my Lord & vncle I have bene received: and ought not I then helpe him to punish the rashnes of Calex, who alone hath disdained to obey me, & allow of my promotion vnto the Empire of the Tartarians? But it behooveth vs also to make provision against this enemy which we have before vs, who feemeth to be rather a defender then an affaulter, according to the aduertisements we have receiued of his preparations. We must also thinke that Calix hath not attepted this without hope of being supported by the king of China, against whom he did see that wee did arme our selves, for to require justly that which belogeth vntovs. There is good cause therfore we foresee how to hinder him from entring into our kingdome, whilft I shalbe busied in reducing this bold fellow vuto his dutie. We must therefore strengthen our borders,

Ell octoria

and leave all my munition and provision of victuall in this place, the armie which wee shall leave here will fpend them, we will carrie backewith vs all our artilleries and engins vnto a fafe place, we will leave vpon the borders five and twentie thousand Parthian horse, fortie thousand of those sent by the Emperour my Lord and Vncle, and a hundred thousand footmen under the charge of Calibes, of whose faithfulnesse I am most affured. I will likewise aduertise Samay to set forwards towards me with fiftie thousand horse as soone as he canand my felf with all diligence, will march forwards with the rest of my armie towards this bold fellow, & when I shall be aduanced, I will attend the counsell and commaundemen of the Emperour. His discourse was allowed of, although Calibes was defirous to accompanyhim, notwithstanding he thought obedience was better the facrifice. They which had not understood of the doings of Calix, thinking this a matter of great importance, there was in the Counfell contrarie opinions; the one faying it was necessarie to assure matters at home, the other party, that it was a great enterprise to feeke to make head with an armie against the king of China, & in the meane while to have so daungerous a Cancer within his realme, as was the revolting of the people: but these men entred not into the most secret counsell of the Prince, who had long fince forefeene the practifes of Celix, having a great armie most readie to joyne with him vpon the first commaundement sent vnto the fame:neither did they any thing at all perceive, that the Prince Tamerlan, how much disquieted soeuer he made shew to be, was very glad to have occasion ministred to enter with armes into the state by him newly obtayned, so as the same might seeme iust in the eyes of the Emperour

Emperour his vncle. For by this meanes he should take possession of his gift, obtaine the good will of his souldiers, and be well affured to punish this fellow so thoroughly, as others which might peraduenture be tick- Thewife foreled with the same humor would take therby example, & merlan. therefore wisely had he separated the forces of the Tartarians. For what face foeuer Calibes fet on the matter, he harkened what wold become of Calix, that he might likewise make some comotion: there was left with him to command ouer the Parthians the Prince of Thanais. without whom he could not doe any thing, for that he led the auantgard. Thus was the army deuided in two parts; the king of China remaining long before he was aduertised of all this, and thought he had all the forces both of the Tartarians & Parthians vpon his armes, fo as this was of no finall importance to fauor our affaires: for Tamerlan had especially given commandemet, that Good direction the passages which are easily gotten, might as diligent-merlan. ly be kept, to the end that the king of China should not be advertised of the tumult. Then Tamerian set forward his auauntgard under the leading of Odmar: he promised vnto himselfe shortly a happie successe in his affaires, and advertised the Emperour of all: but it came vnto him when he was ficke. And furely it was high time for Tamerlan to march forward, or else all had beene revolted, so leaving his footemen he made great journeyes. Now during the time that hee had bene advertised, and made his abode to consult, which was the space of two monethes: Calix having prefented himselfe with a hundred thousand fighting men before Cambalu, a very great citie, and chiefe of the Prouince of Catayo, the inhabitants thereof came out to meete him, and did also receive him with all the ioy

いいい そのかんじゅう

The Historie

Cambalu repolieth visto Calix. that might be. They had fent likewise to Euinsay, where the Emperour was at that time, to intertaine and affure him of their obedience, and that they didrife vp onely because they would not bee subjected vnto the Parthians. They had with one cofent also sworne not to acknowledge Tamerlan for their Emperour: but they did befeech the Emperour that they might rather receine Calix, to the end (faid they) the greatnesse of the Tartarians should not bee buried within the straite bounds of the Parthians. But as soone as they heard that Tamerlan approached, it did bring much hinderance vnto the affaires of Calix: for these confederates fo lincked together, made full reckoning that his abfence would be for the space of eight or tenne moneths at the least, what prosperity soeuer he were like to haue in his enterprise: but he had plotted out the businesse for them in another fort. Euen as it is often seene, that when a Schoole-master entreth on a sudden into the schoole, with a rod in his hand, when as the schollers are in disorder, busied in beating one another, or neglecting the charge given them by the Schoolmaster: in flich and the same manner did Tamerlan come vnto the Tartarians whom Calix raised vp, being the at Cambalu whither all the Provinces came to gratifie him. This was bad newes for him, to heare that Tamerlan approched, one of the greatest Captaines of the world, and who was the best followed, being most worthie that not onely they and the Tartarians should acknowledge him, but also all the Nations of the world, being worthie to commaund them, because he was so vertuous. He did as much as he could to coceale thefe newes but report cannot be kept secret, it runpeth vpon the house toppes, and flideth even into the houses, & looke how the

the Moone diministieth and encreaseth, being neuer Anapt compei stedfast in one estate: so many people which had vn- rison of report aduifedly followed him, began to affemble themselves together for to make new matches, lightly changing their opinions. You might then have feene the peo- confused feare ple gather together in troopes within this great Ci- within the city tie, here a thousand, and there two thousand, not knowing whereuppon to resolue, every one of them being afeard of the inst indignation of Tamerlan, vnto whom fo lately they had fworne their obedience, & had acknowledged him for their Prince and Emperour, according to the comandement of his vicle. They knew him to be of the bloud of fo many Emperors, and that he had ruled over them with such great instice, they had therefore their consciences which did accuse them as guiltie, and did fee the hand alreadie lifted up to punish their offences. This caused every one of the people throughly to bethinke them of the follies by them comitted, in opening their gates vnto this rebell, that conspired against his Prince. Now whilest our army marched towards Caindu, and from thence vnto Calatia, whither our army went eafily, looking for the forces of his natiue countrey of Zachetay to come & ioyne with him: he did not yet forget to fend forward dayly of our fouldiers towards Cambalu, fo as they supposed all our forces to be on the necke of them alreadie, which gaue great terror vnto the people : for the nature of them is The nature of fuch, that often times they ground their affaires uppon the compron prosperitie, which they hold most affured, not so much people. as dreaming that the events of matters of the world be often contrarie vnto that they have in themselves imagined. Calix perceiuing that the people did

repent, he thought best to withdrawe himselfe out of Cambalu, determining to oppose himselfe against Tamerlan, and sent for his power from all places, putting all vppon the euent and hazard of a battell. Hee had also received advertisement of the small contentment the Emperour conceived of his proceedings, and how he had fent for all his forces to march thither, that from thence they might goe and ioyne with his The great cha Nephew Tamerlan, and how he falling againe into the

Tamerlan.

riall ring rate extremitie of his sicknesse, had sent his imperiall ring vnto Tamerlan, had given commaundement that he should be obeyed euen as his owne person, both during his life, and after his death; and therefore knew well, that he must of necessitie aduenture all, feeing Tamerlan came towardes him. So hee drewe out of Cambalu full fiftie thousand men, as well Burgesses, as souldiers which were there in Garrison, hauing wonne all the Captaines which the olde Emperour had placed there in Garrison, amounting to the number of thirtie thousand men, and him that commaunded ouer them, who had consented vnto the reuolt of this great Citie. To make it short, having affembled all his forces, he had fourescore thousand horse, and a hundred thousand footemen, the which he had gathered together from all partes. I knowe that the sedition of Calix was such, and in such manner plotted, that he did euen prouoke the Moscouites. that at the verie same time they might inuade Zachetay. Whereunto the Moscouite as a faithfull Prince, would not in any case hearken, a thing which I have often heard Odmar report, commending the Moscouite, and maintaining him in peace with his mafter, by often

remem-

remembring him many times of this good turne performed: for it is very credible, that if the Moscouite had at the very fame time entred Zachetay, he had hindered the forces of this Prouince, in fuch fort as it should not have beene able at all to give aide vnto the affaires of Cambalu. Behold how they which guide the sterne a good adverof the common-wealthes-barke should in time give re- men in authomedie vnto the discontentments of the mightie. For ritie. when they have attained vnto authoritie, they doe readily trouble all things, having therein alwaies very feditious minds, fo as they are very willing to shuffle the cardes with them: and therefore such vproares are not to be neglected, but remedied speedily. Our army then marched with all diligece, in fuch fort as certain fcouts which were two thousand horse, had newes of the army of Calix, the which came forwardes directly towardes vs, whereof they caused the Emperour to be certified speedily, who sent thither two thousand horses more, to the end they should keepe the passage of a riuer called Brore, by the which our victuals were conueved vnto the armie, and also for to win alwaies time, the Prince knowing right well that the motions of ciuill wars be furious at the beginning, and that it is the best to resist them slowly, drawing them alwaies out at length if it be possible. For the people in the end acknowledging their faults, their meanes and money failing them, and oftentimes victuals also: on the contrarie fide in a royall army none of all this doth happen, where all things are fauourable, and the fouldiers well disciplined, obedience & order being wisely observed. Then had the Emperour the guiding of his owne purposes, for he had received commaundement from the Emperour his vncle, to hazard therin all for all, deline-

The proceedings of the two armies. 34

ring vp into his hands the fafegard of his life and estate, that he might thereby end his dayes in peace, willing him likewife, to punish this arrogant fellowe and his partakers. By this meanes came forces from all parts vnto Tamerlan; but on the contrarie part, the enemies armie was then in his chiefest force, and beganne to feele the want of victuals, by reason of a desert and certaine mountains which it had passed, where there was a Lorde subject vnto the great Cham, who after he had promifed him helpe for the conducting of victuals from Cambalu vnto his armie, as soone as he perceived him to be farre off, changed his minde, and beganne to withdraw himselfe from his fide, and to make warre vppon him: fetting vpon his men, hauing gathered fouldiers together, which was a great discommoditie vnto him for his armie, in fuch fort as he must of necessity come vnto a day of battell. But Tamerlan having advertisement of all his difcomodities, found the means to passe over foure thoufandhorse to joyne with Cangi (for so was this Lord named) to give order thereby for cutting off the comodities which came from Cambalu: & (as I have faid) the Emperor having caused the foords of Brior to be carefully searched, and occupying all the passages with his armie, he possessed twelve or fourteene leagues of rich ground and good, having behind him the falt lake, and before him the river of Oftan. And there did he watch aduantage, staying the comming of his enemies, with whom they thought to fight, at the very instant they should arrive; but they were therein deceived, for they were kept occupied with roades and skirmilhes, and the maine battell came not to the fight: fo as it was two moones (or rather two monethes) before we aduan-

advaunced towards them, in fo much as necessitie constrained them to retire towardes Cambalu. The Prince thereof aduertised, passed ouer the river with his armie, which was found to be a hundred and fiftie thoufand horse, and two hundred thousand footmen, resolued to ioyne battell, fearing least Calix would returne and winter at Cambalu, and should be driven to fight within the same, where not doubting of the victorie, he feared yet least so great and rich a citie as that, being facked, would bring vnto him two great discommodities. The first would be, the losse of the citie; the other, hee feared that taking fuch a citie by force, his armie should be consumed in the spoyle thereof, & vtterly destroyed: or that his old fouldiers made too rich, would no longer follow him. After he had called his principall Captains together, who were much vexed because they fought not, in the end resolued therupon, very fory that therewas no remedy but that the possession of his Empire must be bloudie. Now he had warned Calix to forbeare, and lay downe his armes, and he would pardon him, but this rash fellow (whose courage was not yet to be despised) made no accour of al that: for purposing to commaund, hee could not resolue to obey, which did invite him vnto a short life with happinesse, rather then vnto a long life honorlesse, euen as they which vndertake such follies must needes resolve. For it is very hard that the Prince his Lord shold affure himself therin, as logashe doth line, fo ticklish is this defire of raigning without a copanion. So our army went vnto Chincy, and made feuen leagues; the enemie having knowledge of our passage, turned his face, and they say that Calix turned himselfe vnto three or foure of his com- The fleech of panions, lifting his hands vnto heauch and said vnto companions,

them that neuer in his life had he received more acceptable newes. The Parthians (faid he) have at this very instant passed ouer the river, and come towards vs, and if Tamerlan, who bargained so much, will fight at this present, I cannot receive a greater good turne. For (faid he) what foeuer shall become of me, it cannot but bring vnto me an immortall glorie; for if I conquer him, who is he in Alia that may be copared vnto me? the Empires of the Tartarians & of Sachetay shalbe mine for I fight against the forces of these two great estates, the which I haue separated thorough my practises: my power confifteth of these two peoples: if I be ouercome, my glorie shall be very great, in that I durst, and vnto this present time we have gotten this glorie, that the valour & courage of Sachetay was two moneths thut vp betwene the rivers of Brior and Oftan for the terror of our armes? therefore the victory which he shall gaine of vs, shalbe vnto vs alwaies glorious. Thus discoursing I have heard (fayd he) did shew a great stournesse of courage. He aduaunced his armie forward, so as the auantcourers of the two armies encountred ech other, and our men were driven even into our Camp, a thing which great ly displeased Odmar, who was in the auauntguard, for the Emperor was very fory that he had not made them ftronger when they came neere vnto the enemie, but the excuse was, that they did not imagin the rashnesse of Calix to be fo great as to fet forwards three leagues. The next daywas spent in discoursing of battailes, euery one for his part, and to exhort the Captaines & fouldiers, to deuide the governmentes vnto Captaines? with the rankes and ordinances. Calix was of the age of forty, he was a Captain renowned with the great Cham; he was one of the chiefest in dignitie and place, and

they

they had alwayes respected him within Tartarie as a person most worthy of the Empire, if the glorie of Ta. merlan and his reputation had not fo far excelled. The Armies began to be viewed the one of the other about eight of the clocke in the morning, where there were very many skirmishes before they came vnto the main battaile(according to the fights of these nations) it was a great plaine wherein they met at that time, with like advantage on either part; Odmar led the Auauntguard The order of (as I have already faid) wherin there was forty thousand Tamerlans horse, & three-score thousand footmen; he made three against calix. squadrons, wherof he set forward one before him that began the battaile. Tamerlan marched in the fame order, but his squadrons were much stronger, the footmen both of the Anauntgard and of the Battaile were on the right and left wings. Tamerlan had drawne out fixe thousand Parthian horse and two thousand Tartarian for the Arier-ward, & had committed the charge therofyntoa faithful servant of his called Axalla (a Geneuois borne) who had great credit with him, because he had bene brought vp with him in his youth, and had good triall of his faithfulnesse, valour, and industrie; hauing given him in charge not to fight at all but vpon the extremitie; and also to gather together all that should be scattered from the Armie. Axalla was a man of great judgment, his vnderstanding being good and quicke, and a Captaine in great estimation amongst the soldiers, although he worshipped God in another maner then we did, and was also a Christian. And he had many of them with him, whom he caused to come fro the Georgians and from Pont Euxin, who fought with great agilitie; this day did he shewe his great fidelitie and courage vnto his Prince. Calix on the other fide,

Ergent,

The Historie

Theorder of Calix battaile against Ta-merlan.

who was a well spoken man, was encouraging his foldiers to favour his fortune, and the libertie of his nation: hee had deuided his troupes into three maine battailes onely, his footmen vpon the right hand, his owne person was in the middest of the maine battaile, with manie footmen which compassed him round about (according as wevfe to fight.) Now Odmar that was a politicke warrier, stayed their comming without remouing:his first squadron rushed furiously ypon this great multitude, that on the right fide, wherin was his owne person, & the other on the left side gaue a great push, broke all the order of Calix armie, in such fort, as it was constrained to joine all together, which was a great multitude:at this verie time the Prince charged, which ouerthrew all. You might haue seen in an instat amogst these great companies thus opened, some follow, some flie, some kill, taking of horses, and men tumbling ouer and ouersthey held the victorie fure on our fide, when as, behold, a maine force did come vpon vs, conducted by Calix, who had gathered them together, and they were between fifteene and fixteene thousand horse, which came & set vpon the Princes maine battaile on the flank, and pierced the same, and ouerthrew them in a maner all. Now you must vnderstand, that those on Calix part retired at the verie first charge eue vnto their carriages, and our men had followed the vi-

ctorie too hotlie, making great flaughter, in somuch as they charging againe, and finding our forces broken, he did easily shake our Armie, and gave vs a great checke, so throughly, that wee were vpon the point to lose the battaile. The Prince Tamerlan was throwne to

the ground; in the meane while his maine Battaile

retired, continually fighting according to our maner.

The battaile between Tamerlan and Calise within the countrie of Cataio.

Tamerlan throwne to the ground,

the

The Prince was not long in mounting againe on horfbacke, looking continually on his Arier-guard, which had not the meanes to joine with him; and earnestly viewing the countenance of the same. Nowe our footmen at such time as hee went to give the charge, was open, and after fout againe, and had not bene as yet fet vpon by anie, they had bene onely breathed vpon at the charges which had bene given; Axalla ioyning with it his troupes referued for the Arier-ward. During this space Calix did hotlie pursue the troupe of Tamerlan, who retired, skirmishing continually with Calix enioned the victory one his fouldiers, being almost all Parthians. The enemies boure. maine battaile did greatly diminish, for his fouldiers went a spoyling here and there within the campe of the Battaile, and they could not discerne by reason of the great dust, the Arier-ward which followed in good order after, killing and ouerthrowing all that vvere opposed against them. When as (behold) at the same instant there came a crie euen vnto Calix, with Turne, turne: there being a thousand or twelve hundredhorse which Axalla had seuered from the rest, who having already advanced themselves brauely, were come to handigripes with Calix, having received commandement to mingle amongst them, for to redeeme the Princes maine Battaile, which was purfued by them. Then did Calix in returning perceive, that both his Empire and glorie, together with the good fortune which he one houre hadfully injoyed, were for ever vtterly loft, & then began he to repent himselfe of his follie: & after he had commanded a charge to be given for the repelling of the auant-currers, hee staid, wniting his men, for he had as yet 1 1000, horfe: but he could not descrie whether those which were with Axalla shold be

40

men, a thing which did greatly amaze him. On theother fide he did perceive that at the same instant he left pursuing the Emperours maine battaile, in that very time it had gotten a loofe off, joyning together such of the men as had bene scattred from the same; attending the successe of this charge, that hee might beginne his fight againe, notwithstanding he being bold and braue had his recourse vnto extremitie by his armes, and hauing nothing in his face but boldnesse, he exhorted his men to fight valiantly with him, and pursue the good Calix exhortafortune which the great God had put into his handes this day:that these were scattered men which sought to ioyne with their fellowes, and it was necessary to hinder them from that. In this meane time his Army did stronglie ioyne it selfe together, the which Axalla well considering, thought that the good fortune of two great Emperours was this day in his power, and vnder his conduct, and that his life or death could not but prooue most glorious, being for the safetie of his good master, who had put in him so great confidence; he encouraged his fouldiers valiantlie, commanding the first charge to be given, and brauely affifting his men, hee charged so strongly, that he passed cleane through the fquadron of Calix, who was hurt in his mouth with the blow of a Lance, after had performed the dutie both of a souldier and Captaine. In the end, valiantly fighting, he fell into Axallas owne handes, the which with one voice he proclaimed through all his campe, the which

ouerthrew the courage of all his fouldiers. Prince Ta-

merlan also set vpon the flanke of one of those troupes

Calix taken prisoner by Axalla.

tion vnto his

\$25.678 .

Tamerlan his great victory against calix, broken already by Axalla; and so was the victorie en-

tire. There were flaine of the one fide and of the other, more

more then fiftie thousand men. It cost our Emperour Fifty thousand deare, who faid that he neuer fought with greater dan- the battail begerofbeing ouercome. He honoured greatly Axalla betweene Tafor his good endeuour and wife conduct, who brought calix. vnto him Calix fore hurt in the mouth with the blow of a Lance, and another blow of an arrow in the body. He fpake vnto him , but the other being fierce and bold, answeredhim nothing at all, making a signe that his mouth did hinder him; he was kept vntill the next day, caix beheaand was judged by all the Counfell worthie of punish- ded. men:whereupon he caused his head to be smitten off, the which he sent to be presented vnto the inhabitants of Cambalu: he caused the like to be done vnto all the chiefe leaders, not for crueltie, but for necessitie, knowing very wel, that the means to cut off the foot of civil warres, is to punish the heades of the same, for they be Hydras which grow up but too fast. After this the Armie marched into the kingdome of Cataio, a countrie A description rich in graffe, and in all kinds of pastures, abounding of Cataio. with great quantitie of beafts, and people which knew not what warre meant. The Prince gaue commandement that these people should not be accounted as enemies, but his good subjects, that he would vse all the cities well, as Cangi, Sochgi, Gonzæ, Tagni, Togara, Congu, which had revolted, and were come to fue for pardon at his handes, in humbling themselues before him; the which he granted vnto them, enjoyning them only to prouide sufficient victuals for his armie: and neuer to be so ill aduised as to harken vnto those, who for their particular ambition would withdraw them from the obedience due vnto their true and naturall Prince and Emperour. Now this mercifulnesse was presentlie spread abroad, which was of no small importance for

the appealing of others who had put all their hope in extremitie, which is in lofing their owne lives to make others doe the like: & especially the inhabitats of Cambalu had taken this resolution: but being informed of the Emperours clemency, changed their opinions;notwithflanding some of them which were the most fedicious, who thought they should run the same fortune with their leaders, were in despaire, doing as much as in them lay, to draw with them the destruction of their citie, the which this mildnesse had appealed, and changed into hope of the Princes clemency. In the meane while our army daily aproched, and at fuch time as we came neerest, the more did the seare of all the citie increase, in somuch as the Prince was advertised daylie from those which fauoured his side, of all things within the citie, and he was affured that euerie one determined to obey the Conquerour, and to do what soeuer he commanded. The which being knowne vnto the Prince, he left all his armie at Gonfa, and himfelf went directly vnto the citie of Cambalu, where all thinges were made quiet, by the means of thirtie thousand soldiers, being the ordinarie garrison, whom he caused to enter therinto before him, and two houres after entred into the same himself, being received with great magnificence, not yeelding as yet to pronounce the word of pardon, referring all vnto the Emperour, and to the ordinarie course of iustice. Willingly saying that hee pardoned the common people; flewing himfelf fundrie times openly gentle and curte ous , honoring them greatly amongst others of the citie, which had taken his part. Now he stayed for the returne of one of his fauorites, whom he had fent vnto the Emperour, to carrie him newes of the victorie, and of the death of Calix

The ordinary garrifon at Cambalu of 3000. fouldi-

Calix, and that the chiefe of this faction remained prifoners with him; also to know what inflice the Emperour would appoint to be inflicted on those Citizens which were the first beginners of the revolt of this citie : for the Prince being desirous to be esteemed mercifull, and to win love within this great citie, would not execute iustice of himselfe, nor in his ownersame, but by the Emperor his vnkle, whom he did gratifie herein leaving the authority wholly vnto himselfe, and by this meanes he was not not esteemed cruell. Thus the Prince after he had remayned here eight dayes, departed. He was not many dayes journey from the citie before he received tydings how the great Cham his vokle willed that inflice should be executed on them which were the first moouers of this repolt; the which was executed accordinglie in the name of the Emperour; and by his speciall ministers; in such fort, that as the people accused the cruelty of the Emperor, they commended the mercie of Tamerlan. Nowe the Emperour was better in health then he had bene , and greatlie defired to fee the Prince who referred the refor lution of this, whether he should goe vnto him, vntill hee came vnto his Armie, desirous to heare newes thereof, remaining upon the frontiers of China. In this fort went hee away, feparating himselfe as much as hee could from the execution which was in doing at Cambalu, where fome two hundred Burgelles were put to death, for an example vnto the reft, min, their heades being fet vp in the middest of the market place, in figne of a terror vnto the which should hereafter rebell against their Prince. Thus was this warre brought vnto an end, to the great honour and reputation of Tamerlan. And it is also reported for most

Salata C

certain, that if he had not stopped the way of this mischiefe, he had veterly lost this estate, the conspiracie being in a maner generall: but the diligence he vsed in opposing himself against it, caused many to lose their courages. Therefore in such revoltes it is a speciall point, for a Prince to showe himselfe, to enter into the

A goad advertisment for Princes. field, and passe through his Prouinces, to encourage his owne, and give terrour vnto others. For the sedicious doe often declare lies vnto the people, the which the presence of the Prince doth dispearse, even as the eleare Sunne doth a darke cloud, and above all to shew that they seare not those which conspire, making but small reckening of the same. For it is said, that he which sirst beateth the fields, hath best company with him; he must not thinke that without weapons in his hand, and not being on horsebacke, the matter may be remedied with words and admonitions. Athing plotted by a sedicious person, is continually attempted, or but deferdicious person, is continually attempted, or but deferd

A good advertisment ruto Princes. not being on horsebacke, the matter may be remedied withwords and admonitions. Athing plotted by a fedicious person, is continually attempted, or but deferred, but in the end it breaketh out; and therfore a wife and aduised Prince should disperse it speedily by the means of inflice: for fuch spirits are never pacified, but by the terrour of death, and of those which are guilty, the which must be prosecuted as soone as it is discoue. red, and looked vnto at the first rumour therof, having good espials in every place, and providing so well on enerie side, that as soone as the same shall happen, hee may be on the necke of the sedicious. You see howe wifely our Prince made vie hereof, for it is not to bee doubted, but he had discovered the conspiracie long afore the execution of the same. This was the occasion that he kept his forces in readinesse within the country of Sachetay, and marched himself forward to minister occasion vnto others, to discouer vnto him their euil affections

affections, by this means to make the goodnesse of his cause appeare manisestlie vnto all the world. A matter of no small importance to preserve himselfe, and the peoples affections, when they are once seasoned therwith: foas it is the best to make them affailers, if it be possible, and bring to passe that their assailing may be their vtter vndoing. Therefore is it necessarie, if posfible to be (though halfe) on horsebacke, as soone as anie shall be discouered to have a stirring humour and to trouble good order. This must be done, for wordes doe nothing at all satisfie them: you must of necessitie come vnto blowes, for they be ordinarilie rash fellowes, whose eyes ambition blindeth, or else if they be wife (who fee great likelihood at fuch time as they enterprise it) their attempts have often good successe, when they have to doe with negligent and carelesse Princes, or effeminate, or of small courage, who give themselves too much vnto delicacies, and spend their time in pleasure, whereas they ought to have a watchfull eie to looke to the preservation of all within their kingdome, & their hand ready to repulse injuries comming from without. You fee how well our Prince vieth his mildnesse, care, and watchfulnesse: before this hee was but halfe Emperour of the Tartarians, but hereby affured himfelf therof with good dexteritie, & die the Emperourneuer so soone, there is no shew that there can happen anie moment of trouble: for he is there re- Tamerlan bu uerenced for his great mildnesse and clemencie, for re-the love and warding of the good, & bearing fomtimes with a fault reverence of all (if there be any) and for having moreover a stiffe hand to punish the wicked and sedicious. Nowe to come againe vnto our discourse: as soone as our Prince was returned vnto his Army where he found Odmar, who

46

Tamerlas welcommel rato his army, with new and mations.

Armie to march forward and meet him, where hee was received of his fouldiers, and with a loud voice called by all his Captaines and fouldiers; Most great Emperour and most victorious, as they are accustostomed to doe amongst the Tartarians. The Prince afftrange acela- ter he had long discoursed with his Captaines both of the beauty and greatnesse of the citie of Cambalu, hee arrived at his tent, where after hee had declared vnto Odmar in what fort all things had passed at Cambalu: he asked his aduise whether hee should goe and visite the Emperour his vnkle. Odmar who well perceived that the Prince defired it, and called vnto his remembrance the honor which he had received when he was at Quinzai, and that he would have bene very willing to spend the winter with the Empresse, staying for the fpring for to returne vnto the enterprise of China. But Odmar which was no flatterer, and who was a great Counseller of estate, and faithfull vnto our Emperour Tamerlan, spake vnto him in this manner: Inuincible Emperour, so do I beseech you, as may be found in you both valor to conquer, and wisdome to vse the victory: you have left your Army, the which for the space of six

moneths hath bene busied in opposing it selfe against

the forces of your enemies; he whom you have left is a Tartarian, one of the chiefest of this nations do you not know that the Tartarian and also the Parthian, doe in a manner acknowledge none for Prince worthie to command them, but those that go with them vnto the warres? On the other fide, doe you nothing confider, that you have enterprifed this warre to augment the glorie of him who hath chosen and called you? Know

Odmar his wife speech as answer vnto Tamerlan his question tonching the vifesing of his yn-

you not, that the king of China holdeth a great countrie which hee hath given you? It behooveth that you manifest vnto him the affection of your service. Consider also that your glorie and greatnesse will bee more acceptable vnto him farre off then neere at hand. For being farre off, it shineth vnto him for the fauoring of his affaires, but neere, it maketh his owne obscure.Do you not consider the suspitions hee may conceive of your greatnesse? the repentings which often come to them which have made men great, whom they defire afterwards to ouerthrowe: for Princes be variable? What glorie canyon obtaine by this iourneying? Necessitie constraineth you not thereunto, but your reputation will be whollie diminished thereby, and the way of your glorie is altogether contrarie vnto the same. It is better for you to winter gloriously under your tentes in the middest of your men of armes then within the statelie pallaces of Quinzai, in the middest of the sweetnesse of an effeminate Court. They which would finde fault with you will demaund the cause wherefore you left your Armie; they will fay that you threaten the king of China afarre off: it is to be feared also least hee should oppresse your men, from whence will you returne to refift the same, while you bring together againe your men of Armes? The Parthians would as your felfe returne vnto Sachetay. and the Tartarians vnto their Horda, but if you march forward, you shall prepare vnto your selfe an affured victorie of the king of China, and if you doe deferre it, it shall prooue dangerous vnto you, whereas it is now most assured, in as much as he thinketh your Armie busied within your owne country,

your forces empaired, the faith of your peopled changed, and all your Empire revolted. He feeth your Armie led by Calibes to temporize, and being but as it were to defend it selfe, and not to affault any other, he supposeth that all your determinatios are overthrown. Some may thus fay vnto him (as some have suspected, anditis not without reason, but I will not affirme it, being vnwilling to enter any further into your wife enterprises, the which God onely knoweth, who guideth vou) that you have rather left Calibes there the chiefe of the Tartarians, to deliuer your felfe from the suspition you had of him, then for any further defire you had to accomplish your enterprise. Lose not this occasio, the great God delinereth her into your hands, you hold her by the haires, suffer her not to slip fro you. If I have offended your Maiesty with my bold speech, do with me what it shal please you, I am your slaue, lo here my head. The Prince Tamerlan was very fad, and changed his countenance continuallie, when as Odmar spake once againe vnto him, kissing the hem of his garment in all humilitie, as wee are accustomed vnto our Emperours in figne of subjection and bondage.

The great humilitie of the Tartarians voto their Empersur.

The notable answer of the Emperor vnto Odmar.

Then the Emperour answered him, that he had ever knowne his fidelitie and love, and that the cause of his sadnesse was, for that he did not find in himselfe abilitie to recompence the same and that hee aknowled-

ged now in earnest the wisdome of the Emperour his father, in making choise of so worthy a Counseller to assist him, and that hee certainly learned to know, that the greatest seruitude which Princes have with

God, was that there was no end of their glorie, seeing their continual doing was their rest, as in the Diuinity; and that when hethought to give himselfe some ease,

then

then was the time he must in steed of the delicacies and pleasures of Quinzay, make the desertes of Ciptibit the resting place from the travailes of his newe victorie: that it was ended, and his purposes determined: I have also heard the Prince say, that Odmar did not speake vnto him like an earthly but divine man, & that he verilie beleeued that God by his meanes did call him backe from fome mishap which would have light vpon him, to make his glorie increase the more. Now the rumour was already spread ouer all, that the Princes determination was to go and visite the Emperour his vnkle, the which tickled every man with defire to returne into his countrie, hoping to inioy the sweetnesseof his native soyle. When as commandement wasgiuen for a generall review of the whole armie: where the Emperor spake vnto his soldiers in this maner: We have begun (my faithfull fouldiers) an enter-Tamerlan hin prise to go and assault the king of China, who hath of bis feldiers 718 late repulsed even beyond the mountaines the Tarta- bis going forrian name; but we were hindered to our great griefe ward against by the foolish rashnesse of Calix, and were driven china, to turne the bridle for to punish him, wherein you haue all affisted me. It grieueth me that I cannot as well brag of the fresh spoyles of a stranger, as I may vaunt (by the meanes of your weapons) of those our vnfaithfull Citizens; and in times past with your owne felues making triall of my first Armes against the boldnesse of the sierce Moscouite, although for this last civill victorie I am further indebted vnto you for your greater endeuour, and the hazarding of your persons being much greater, so were they our owne people, who would not acknowledge vs, whereof I cannot speake withour shedding of teares, defiring

rather to burie fuch a victorie, what glorie and honour

focuer we have gotton thereby. Neither do I recount these thinges vnto you, but for to manifest that I forget not your faithfulnesse, and the great trauaile you haue endured with me. We must not therfore be wearie, but must turne our weapons against those which thinke that we are greatly troubled, whereas wee are victorious. We have left our companions, who have temporized to heare the euent and successe of our affaires, all our munitions be there; wee must in that place (my fouldiers and friendly followers) passe ouer the rest of winter; our copanions look for vs. The enemie is secure and looketh not for vs at this season of the yeare: for he perceiveth that our Armie which is there is not sufficient for offence, but only for defence. You shall receive double pay, the better to furnish you against the injurie of cold: and as we shall be cloathed with double garmets, I hope we shal be also apparelled with double glorie. Let vs march on merrily, I my felf will go with you, and be companion of your glorie. After he had thus spoken vuto his fouldiers, they all cried; One God in heaven, and one Emperour on the earth: and bowing downe al their heads in token of humilitie, they shewed how agreeable they were to obey that which he commanded. Thus everie one returned into his tent, where they abode yet eight dayes more. The Prince fent back again Zamai vnto Sachetav with some five and twenty thousand horse and fiftie thoufand footmen, for the faftie of his estate in those parts. Thus after prayers were fayd, all the Armie being affembled together in the presence of the Prince (according to the custome of our Emperours) our Armie began to march forward. He forgat not likewise

The crie of the fouldiers upon the Emperours eration.

to dispatch one vnto the Emperour his vnkle, to give him vnderstanding of all this resolution, the which he verie well liked of. The Prince by the same messenger did befeech him to fend vnto him in the fpring of the yeare some fiftie thousand men to repaire his Armie, and certaine money also for the payment of his men of warre: which he graunted him. Moreouer the conducting of good store of warlike munition, & plentie of victuals for to renew ours : for this war was principally enterprised for the profit and greatnesse of the Tartarians, & for the importance which the loffe of the Lordships of Paguin & Quifu was vnto them, wherby the king of China had greatly stregthened and assured his estate, in so much as he might at his pleasure enter vpon the Tartarians, and the Tartarians could not enterprise against him without great forces, for that hee had caused a wall to be made between the spaces of the mountains, which was fortie leagues long, fo as they dead by the king were defended hereby fro the ordinary incursions, the of China forty which continually did greatly enrich the, because they leagues long. brought much cattel through the same, wherin the cutry of China doth greatly abound, by reason it is situated in a temperate aire, being neither too hot nor cold. The tempera. This was the cause that made the Emperour his vnkle threof china. to defire this warre; whom our Prince according to his duty would to the vttermost of his power gratifie, as also his new subjects. So we began to march, and in eight & thirty dayes we arrived at Cipribit, the Army having found great discomodities: there had we newes of Clibes, who was very glad to understand how the affayrs had passed:he came to visite the Prince, who shewed vnto him a very good countenance, and gaue him particular vnderstanding of his determination, and

the kingdom of China. The next day the Prince mounted on horsebacke, and came vnto Pazanfou, where the forces commaunded by Calibes were at that prefent, the which had often fought with and tried the forces of the Chinois : but found the much inferiour vnto their owne. The Emperour caused a generall reuiewe to bee made of all the forces which were vnder Calibes, and after hee beheld the countenances of

these soldiers throughout all their ranks, he caused the to muster, & to receive money, every one crying, God faue the victorious & inuincible Emperour, according to their custome. I had forgotten to declare vnto you how the Prince of Thanais, who was left to command ouer the Parthian nation by the Prince, at such time as Calibes went to meet him, was left in the army to commadit, where being defirous to shew his courage, had made warre, and meeting with foure thousand horse of China, led by the king of China his brother, he fo allured the to him, that having entrapped the, he fought the Prince of with and ouerthew them, bringing a great number of horse and spoiles away and there remained dead upon of borfmen, led the ground fine or fixe hundred, the enemies being retired in disorder, if the night had not bene hee had obtained a most notable victorie. He had for this good fortune much honour at the arrivall of his Prince, and he had also daylie greatlie wearied the Chinois with ordinarie incursions: hee was sonne vnto one of the Princes fifters, & they greatlie honored him, as wel for his vertues, as the place fro whece he was desceded. He was as yet but young, his father being dead old, who

had worthily ferued the Prince (as you have heard) against the Moscouites, commaunding ouer the arere-

ward.

Thanau ouerthrew a troupe by the king of Chinas brother ward, who was notwithstanding a most sufficient & politick Captaine. Now he was desirous of glorie during the abode which he had made, being the formost on the enemies fide, and with great diligence had marked the wall and the places by the which he might enter by force, and sent many spies into the countrey of China. by certain litle wayes that were within the mountains, who advertised him of all. He had also gained through his courtesie a Lord of the same mountaines (called the The Prince of Lord of Vauchefu) who ruled a great Countrey, with Thanais gaiwhom he had so well profited, that he made him desi-the mauntains rous of a new master, and to submit himselfe vnto the to doe the Em-Emperour, receiving daily great discommodity by the Panches. warreswhich the Tartarians and Chinois made: fo as he comming to visite the Prince of Thanais, he affured him of his defire to doe the Prince feruice, and to helpe him in the warre against the Chinois, the which the Prince of Thanais had wifely cocealed fro Calibes. But as foone as the Prince was arrived, hee imparted the same vnto him, the which made Tamerlan desirous to haue some speech with him, so that as soone as the Prince had received commandement from the Emperour, hee fent vnto Vauchefu to advertise him of the Princes arrivall, and of the commaundement which he had received: whereof the other was very glad, and hauing appointed a day, the Prince tooke his journey (without stirring of the army) into the campe of the Prince of Thanais, which was neere vnto the river of Languenne, whither he had caused this foresaid Lord to come, who met him there. The Prince having spo- conference beken with him by his interpreters, hee affured him of tween the Emmuch friendship, and the said Lord him of great fideli-perour and the tie and service, and after many promises made by the cheft.

The Speech of Lerd vato T4-

merlan.

Prince vnto him for his greatnesse and quiet, he discouered vnto him a passage, by the which hee assured him of entrance into the kingdom of China, & with facility to fet vpo the forces of the king of China, which were appointed for fafegard of the wall, the which as I have faid, contained fortie leagues; a matter which gaue cause of good adullement vnto the Prince: for Calibes who was an old Captaine, found it a matter of great difficultie to go through this passage by force, according to the view he had taken thereof, and had caufed the same to be reviewed by others. For it was carefully kept by the kings forces, who was not wearie to be mounted on horsebacke, affuring himselfe that fiftie thousand men the which he had placed for the guarde of the wall, were sufficient to stoppe all that would enterprise to force the same. So this Lord (much made of and gayned thorough the good countenance of the Prince) was a great furtherance vnto the good fuccesse of this enterprise. Then the Prince after he had heaped vpon him gifts of faire horses, rich furres, and other rare things, he willed him to vtter that which he had to fay vnto him. This Lord spake then in this manner: Know my Lord, that it is but loffe of time to thinke the mountaine that with your armes you shold be able to force the wall which the Chinois have built against the incursions of your subjects, the defendants have too much aduantage therein. I doubt not of your fouldiers stoutnesse & of their courage, I know you have coquered many Nations with them, and that what foeuer you commaund the, they will die or do the same. I know you have great and wife Captaines with you, that your person is only of all the world worthie to commaund them: but all this will be but in vaine against the wall of the Chinois, where

where I affure you there are fifty thouland men to keep it, and you cannot stay there so short a time, but there will come thither fiftie thouland more, led by the Xianxi who hath fuch a commaundement. The king of China will himselse march forward also, who will give you battell with two hundred thousand horse and as many footemen. After you have fought, I beleeve that the fortune and valour of your men may obtaine the victorie, the which will cost you deare : but for to shew vnto you how much the reputation and mildnesse of your men hath bound me vnto them, I will thew you a meanes by the which you may eaufe fiftie thousand men to enter into the kingdome of China, whom I my selfe will conduct; and they shall be on them which keepe the wall, in a manner as foone as they shall perceive it. In the meane time you shall cause your men to go vnto a place that I will tell you. which will be very discommodious vnto the Chinois. by reason of a mountaine ouer against them, which you must cause them to win: for I affure my selfe, that when they shall perceive your souldiers to be passed, they will loofe their courage, and you may eafily win the paffage for to fauour those men of yours which shall be passed ouer with me. And for to shew vnto you the affection & fidelitie of that I speake, I will deliver into your hands Hoffages offer an only sonne I have, and two little daughters with my red by the wife: I have also one brother, who I am affured will fol- mountaine Lord vnto the low me to do you service. The Prince having heard this Emperour. Lord speake, received great joy thereof, hoping that his affaires should happily succeede, and this he kept very secret, for even the Prince of Thanais knew not the meanes that this Lord had; feeing there was onely present the Prince & an interpreter, and the Prince after he places

The Historie

had thus spoken vnto him, gratifying him with all hee could possibly, this Lord retyred himselfe, accompanied with the Prince of Thanais, who conducted him backe againe with all the honour that might be. So the Emperour returned from thence into his quarter, and the next day after he had imparted the whole vnto Od.

vnto Prince Tamerlan.

mar, and heard Calibes concerning that which he had learned of the departing of the king of China; and of his preparation, which was great. This enterprise feeming hard voto him, after due reuerence yeelded voto calibes oration the Prince he spake vnto him in this manner: Know my Lord, that I am your flave for to obey you: but feeing you require me to give you an accout of all that I know of the estate of the kingdome of China, for that I have remained these fixe moneths vpon the borders by your comandement, to hinder them from passing the same, wherby they might hurt your enterprises, I can affirme vnto you that the king of China, who raigneth at this present is of great reputation, and hath increased the limits of his kingdome more then any of his predeces fors, he is proud and bold, he causeth himselfe to be named of his people, Lord of the world. All his strength confisteth in this wall opposed against vs, the which he hath caused to bee made by reason of the ordinarie roades of our Nation. I am of opinion that there be between fiftie and three score thousand men at the guard of that wall, men for the most part trained up in the garrifons of the king of China, and his best fouldiers,& I know no good means to force this wall without great bazard and much loffe of your men. I have vnderstood that towards the lake Hogeen you may find more easie entrance into the kingdome: but this will be 7. or eight daies iourney for your army, and there are many straite places

places, where your army (which is great) will be long time a paffing: on the other fide, this will be a space of time wherein the king of China may give order for his affaires, who supposeth that hee hath not to deale but with me, whom you have left with comandement only of defence. Yet I thinke this to be most for your aduantage, for that victuals will be more eafily conducted vnto your armie: you know that this is the principall finew to bring forth a strong and furious combat. Therfore vnder correction of your grave and more wife aduife, this is as much as I know hereof, leaving vnto your felfe for to discourse of the inner parts of the countrey, whe we shall have set foot thereinto, we will talke with you of the same. The Prince hard him very attentively, but he knew not at all that which the Prince had further learned, infomuch as the Prince, who would that his reputation and glorie should be attributed vnto his valour, and vnto those of his army, what practise soever he had in hand, and after euerie one had declared his opinion, he faied; that he hoped the great God the vnitie of whom he would maintaine against such idolaters, and his iust right should answere the reasons which do cotradict his purpose, and the valiant arme of his souldiers shall quite ouerthrow whatsoeuer opposeth it self against the same. Behold how Princes make themselves wondered at for their forces, whereas oftentimes they vie more the Foxes craft, then the Lions strength. Our Prince would wifely attribute vnto himselfe the reputation of ouercomming by open warre, and concealed from his fouldiers that which he held as affured to execute it, to the end the honour of a happie conducting might be ascribed vnto him onely. Now our Prince hauing satisfied enery one of the Kings and Lords that did

accompanie him, he appointed the meeting place for his armie to be at a certaine place, where he meant to chuse fiftie thousand fighting men, and deliuer them vnto the commandement of the Prince of Thanais, vnto whom he joyned the Lord Axalla a Geneuois (for that he knew him to be discreete) for to accompanie him, commaunding him to give credite vnto him, for his experience and fidelitie. The day appointed being come, the Lord with his brother came to the Emperor, having viewed the place againe, & found it to be forceable & fit to passe, assuring the Prince once again of the happy successe of their enterprise, & the Prince being assembled with them to conferre together, resolued in the end, that his person with al the army shold approch vnto the walles directly ouer against Quaguifou, in Fiftie thou fand which meane space the 50000. men should march forwards vnto the place appointed, and where they were affured to paffe, conducted by the Chinois Lord, vnder the charge of the Prince of Thanais & Axalla Geneuois. The Emperor hauing not failed to deliuer vnto the the best souldiers of his armie, & having set downe the order by them to be observed, hee willed that the Lord Axalla should leade twentie thousand of them, & shold march the first, the rest led by the Prince of Thanais, and that every one should have one of those Lords to guide them, that by their meanes the enterprise might be more fafely directed. So having marched x.leagues, they arrived at the passage, the which was won not fin-

ding any man there to relift them: and having taken a light repast, they beganne to march forward other ten

who suspected no such thing, having only an eye vnto

them which marched for to force their walles, affuring

them-

men fent into China by a fecret paffage, under the leading of the Prince of The mais and Axalla.

A fecret way found into Chi na, by the con-leagues which yet remained, where the Chinois were, duct of the mountaine Lird.

thefelues to have the maistry, considering their advantage. But it fell out much otherwise, for even at the very fame time the Chinois did perceive the Princes armie to approch vnto their wall, as foone did they difery Axalla with twenty thousand men, who aduanced forward being followed by the Prince of Thanais with thirtie thousand souldiers chosen out of the whole army, who without any comunicacion set vpon the Chinois, who came presently vnto the, having left a certaine number of their campe for the guard of the wall : but they were presently won by the footemen led this day by Odmar, who passed ouer so as the Chinois were cut off between Axalla ouerour armies. When Axalla beganne the battell he ouer-threw the Chi. threw them in a manner all, the Prince of Thanais not the wall of hazarding himselfe therin: there was great riches got-partition. ten this day, the king of China his cofin (whom he called king) was taken prisoner: there was a great quantity of goldamongst the, as well on their armes as on their horse and furniture: they shewed no great stoumesse. The newes hereof being come vnto the king of China, who at that present time was at Quantiou, brought vnto him great aftonishment, for that he judged it a thing that could not possibly come to passe, you might have seene euery one filled with fright, teares & cries, bewailing the loffe of their friends. The king although he had not beene vsed but to see Fortune alwaies friendly with a mild countenance, & now to fee her turned backward with her haire briffeling, he made thereof not with standing no great shew, but gathering together fouldiers from all partes (as the custome is of these people) The custome he caused all the Priestes and fuch as had the charge of the Chinois. of holie thinges to come vnto him, and after exhorrations vied, he (as their head) commaunded them to

offer facrifice vnto their Gods, of whom the Sunne is the principall commaunding in heaven, whom they hold opinion to be the chiefest cause of their being, accounting it immortall and impassible, moving it selfe onely for the benefit of living creatures, this did he comaund to be observed thorough out all his Cities; and the second thing was, that every one able to beare armes should mount on horsebacke, and come ynto the king at Paguinfou, whither he doubted that we would go, because it was one of the neerest townes ypon the borders. I have forgotten to declare that this Lord who had the charge to conduct fiftie thousand men vnto the frotiers at such time as they which were there had need thereof, was soone in a readinesse, and came to oppose himselfe against the Princes armie which entred, and beeing skilfull in the wayes of the countrey, troubled much the armie: for a great number of his men were on horsebacke. The Prince determined to beate downe all the wals the better to affure his returne, as also all the fortresses which were there upon all the passages, all of them having yeelded thefelues after his victorie, thewing himselfe very courteous vnto the people of these mountaines, he gaue vnto this Lord a small portion of land, wherein there be seven or eight good townes. Archij, Ymulij, Faliquien, Fulij, Cohensen, Quialij, Pulij, Quianlu, who came and deliuered vp their keyes vnto him, being neighbours vnto this Lord, and gaue him the government of the frontier province of Xianxij, shewing himselfe to be a Prince of his word, and acknowledging the notable services the which this Lord had done him. He referred the honouring of his

brother vntill he had meanes to doe the same: all which mildenesse was of no small importance to fauour the

conquest

The Emperour wonnethe wals of China.

The mountain Lord rewarded with great government.

conquest of this countrie: for the people thereof are great wonderers, especially when as they see the curtesie of the men of warre, a thing which is altogether against their custome: for they are very cruell vnto their The Chimis enemies ouer whom they have the victorie, holding quell vnto that of the Indians, who have often entercourse with them. Now in our Prince there was not any thing noted but curtesie vnto the conquered, infomuch as this madehim admired and honoured. Now the question being after all the fortes of the borders were beaten downe; to knowe what course the armie should take, the Prince had received newes, how that the king of China assembled his forces and marched forwardes. and that he was there in his owne person, and that he strengthened also his Cities which are sufficiently fortified, and more then in any countrey adioyning vnto him, fo as this caused the Prince to determine not to affault any strong citie, and to leave any of them behinde him, this were a great discommoditie vnto him for the victualing of his armie: for to leave the enemie behind him, being affured to have him on his front, this feemed to him nigh. Therfore vpo these doubts he thoght good to have the aduise of his Captaines, & having affebled the together, he propounded all these difficulties vnto them: in the end after fundry opinions, his refolution was, to leave nothing behind him, and to affault fome famous citie, & take it, by meanes wherof he may nourish his armie, and secondarily call the enemie vnto batte!! The which the conqueror should alwayes seeke, A good adner. and the defender the latest he can hazard the same. For tifement for that it is a very doubtfull thing to commit themselues Generals. vnto a battell, his dutie being rather to delay, vndermining the conquerour by length, and by wearinesse, and

light skirmishes, then to fight in open field. For when a Generall hath wisely set his men in order, and hath exhorted them to performe their duties, what can hee do more then commit all vnto Fortune, and to the will of the Lord of Hosts? And it seemeth vnto me, that in no feates of armes doth fortune shew her trickes more often, then in the successe of battels, favouring often the weakest, and deceiving them sooner which trust in their skill of ouercomming. The examples thereof are verie common in the historie of the affaires of the world, where small armies have ouercome innumerable numbers. I speake here by way of a preamble of things which you shall hereafter heare: and of the euill councell which the king of China received, Now for to returne againe vnto my historie, it was concluded, and the aduise of euerie one was to conquer the countrie by litle and litle, fo as their enterprise was to draw directly vnto Paguinfow, which as it was a great Citie and one of the chiefelt, fo is it also strongly fortified and well replenished with people: but the Prince made account that the king of China would hazard a battell. Now the Prince before hee would cause the same to be summoned, had informed himfelfe well of the lituation thereof, and causing all the countrie which is champion to be represented into his view, which are for the most part plaines, this increased the more his hope of bringing to good end his enterprise: the riches on the other side gave courage vnto the fouldiers, and principally vnto the Tartarians desirous of spoyle, who carried with them cartes to conuey away their spoyles, Paguinfon being accounted an exceeding rich and wealthie Citie. Then he dispatched Odmar with sourteene thoufand

pyartes in China made by Tamerlan with his wife proceedings therein.

fand horse, to advance forward and summon thesame, as for to hinder victuals from being conveyed thereinto out of the champion countrey: to the end that the cattell remayning in the fieldes, shoulde bee a meanes to maintaine and nourish his armie. I had forgotten to tell you, that for the acknowledging of the Lord Axalla his services, the Prince had made him Captaine generall of all his footemen, which Axalla made was one of the principall honours of the armie. He captaine genecaused the sayd Lord Axalla to march after Odmar, footmen, with all the footmen, which was verie neere a hundred and fiftie thousand men, well trayned up in the warres, and good expert fighters. Hee marched himselse immediatly after with all his horsemen, artilleries, engines, and other munitions belonging vnto warre, directly vnto Paguinfou. Odmar did ride twentie leagues this day, fo as he arrived there contrarie to their expectation, looking rather for the king then for the enemie, and having taken much cattell. wherewith the countrie greatly aboundeth, he pitched his tents, leaving the citie betweene him and vs, and stayed for his footmen, who marched forwards in the meane space, sending continually vnto the warre, for to wearie the enemie. This endured three or foure dayes, untill our footemen ledde by this braue Christian Geneuois, shewed themselues in the plaine of Paquinfou. Then the Citie was fummoned to yeeld obedience vnto the Emperour, or else they should receive the law of the conquerour. They made answere, that they were determined to line and die in the feruice of their Prince. Now you must vnderstand that it was fortie yeares or thereabouts, fince the Father of the king which raigneth at this present ouer the Chinois.

had conquered it from the Empire of the Tartarians. and having driven out all the inhabitants, they had planted therein newe Colonies, so thoroughly, that there were but few of the first remembrance, but onely they of the flat country and small walled townes, who came from all partes and brought their keyes, most willingly submitting themselves vnto the obedience of the Prince: fo as there was great aboundance of victuals within our armie: and if we had beene within our owne countrie, there could not have come greater store; a thing which made our Prince hope for a happie fucceffe, there beeing no other difficultie which for the most part can ouerthrow a great armie as ours was, and withdraw them from their enterprise. And thus the Citie of Paguinfou is befieged, and our footemen camped round about within an arrowes shot of all the walles. They within the citie did vse great endeuor for their defence, and our Prince omitted nothing for their offence. Axalla having viewed a great and strong suburbe, which was in length almost halfe a league, supposed that those of the Citie kept no watch there: that this must needes be, for that they would not make him obstinate; hee had a determination to winne it in the night, and having imparted it vnto the Prince, vpon the first watch all his men were readie, all of them having made provision of ladders, and of such things as are necessary for winning thereof with handblowes, and having affaulted it on fundrie partes, after the fight had continued two houres, Axalla remained the conquerour, and cut in peeces eight thoufand men at the least which were within the same: the spoile was great, there were many of Axalla his me slain of one fide, which was that by the which they doubted

The siege of the citie of Paguinfou.

of great suburbe wonne by Axalla in the night. to be affaulted. But on the other fide, by the which it was taken, there was scarce any one flaine. The taking of this fuburbe did greatly aftonish those of the Citie, who had marked the lustinesse of our men, and beganne to enter into doubt of their fafetie, which vnto this day they accounted as most affured. On the other side they did see that the Princes promises to be there within fifteene daies fayled, they did fee this great army which daily wanne footing, the engines and anillerie readie to offer violence on one fide by them commaunded, the which did greatly annoy them, fo as diverfe principall men of the Citie, defired rather to make triall of the conquerors clemencie, then of his rigor. But hee The Governors which commaunded within , who was one of the grea- freech rote test Lords of the countrey, and one of the best beloued those of the city with the king, affured them of the kings approch, fo as from yeelding, they should not want succour in time of necessitie: that there was no neede therof at this present, and although they had loft a suburbe, it should be great folly not to be willing to defend a citie, and their fortreffes being as yet entire, that for his part, hee would make proofe of his fidelitie vnto his Prince, with the hazard of his life and goods. These words were of no small importance. and being vitered in the affembly of the people, it caufed their courages for to change, in fuch fort as every one retired into his quarter, beeing resolved with the losse of their citie, to lose also their lines. Now you must understand that the fituation of the citie was of hard The stuation accesse, being seated upon a plaine, the which was enuironed round about with mountaines, one of them only approching the citie, which ouerlooked it on front vpon the North side, where was a valley by the which they passed, and there did runne a river: on this side was the

to flay them

of the citie of Paguinfou.

The Historie suburbe situated which had beene taken, so as the meanes to fuccour the Citie was stopped, our souldiers keeping the passages of these Mountaines, the which were in the old time the borders of the kingdome: for Paguinfou was once gouerned by the Tartarians, which kept it for a defence against the Chinois, but had lost the same, and these mountaines were the limits of China against the foresaid Tartarians, who gouerned Paguinfou at that time, fo as these mountaines were of hard accesse, and there remained no other way but on the fide of the fuburbe, the which a riuer compasseth about, running all along the side of a bordering mountaine, vpon the which we caused many bridges to be built, for to have thereby a way for to fuccour our fouldiers, which kept the passages of the mountaines on the enemies fide: fo as it could not be but hardly fuccoured, or elfe by a battell the which the Prince did earnestly desire, as all conquerors should do. I will declare also that during this time Odmar, Calibes and the Prince of Thanais were comanded often by the Prince to make warre, as well for to heare certaine newes of the enemie, as also for to maintaine his horsemen, and to keepe the place the which he had chosen as the field for the battell, to the end that he might live there with his horsemen. He gaue also commandement vnto his men to gather together great store of victuals, fo as they facked many small townes, out of the which they brought a great quantitie. In this meane time the king of Chinaes armie approched (euen like faire weather) the which was very great, as they brought vs word dayly, the Prince determining to go in person & meete with the enemy, accopanied with his principall horsemen, and to leave the greatest part of his footmen at the ficge

fiege, wherunto he had a great defire, omitting nothing that might wearie the besieged, who defended themfelues couragiously. So the Prince began to batter, cau- The fire of fing his engines to approch, as rammes and other mu- Paguinfon. nitions, the which he had made for to come neere vnto the walles, to the end they might come to hand-blowes with the enemies: infomuch as the Citie was affaulted on two fides very coragiously. They within began to be more affeard then before, there beeing fet vp for the fafegard of the munitions, and of a wall which was fallen down, a Caualier raised up very high within an artowshot, which did greatly annoy them, so as they were constrained to forfake the wall in the day, and this caused them to begin a trench for to couer themselves, the which was 22. foote in height, and as much in depth. and fiftie foot in bredth; the which being declared vnto our men, they determined to trie their fortunes, and to give the an affault before they had ended the fame, or at the least to win the wall, & lodge there at the instant. So the Prince sent for Axalla, who was in his own quarter, this affaire depending vpon his charge, and having by his industrie ordered in a manner all the siege, and having acquainted him with his pleasure, commanded him to execute it. The next day putting his me in order they affalted the wall, the which was valiantly defended: but in the end through the valor of Axalla who gave an affalt with 20000. of his best fouldiers, he won the wall, & lodged there, the Prince having so comanded him to do, to stop the heat of the soldiers frogoing any further. Now the Princes purpose was to copound for the citie, & not to force it, for two reasons. The first was, for that he feared, the citie being great and rich, that when the souldiers should sacke it, the enemie who was but

thirtie leagues from thence, thould come vpon them, and by this meanes his army should be found in diforder, also rich souldiers neuer serue well. The other was. for that he would draw out of that citie which was rich and wealthie, those commodities which were necessary for the fure accomplishing of his enterprise, seeing it was necessarie to have such a citie for to make a storehouse of necessarie things for the army. Thus although the wall was won, the enemies wanted not courage yet to defend themselves valiantly, looking for aide according to the newes they had received, that the kings army marched forward. Whileft these things were in doing, one of our engines shooting a bullet, and having ouerthrowen a peece of Anuber, the same did hurt the Gouernour, who at the end of three or foure houres. yeelded up the ghost, the which caused the souldiers to change their resolution, there being none which made them obstinate but he, so as they determined before the Prince should be advertised of the losse of their head. & especially of the great slaughter of men which they had lost in the fight of the wall, all of them with one cofent did resolue for to yeelde themselues vnto the Princes mercie, fauing their liues, and the fouldiers enjoying their horse and weapons. Now I have forgotten to declare how this affault had alreadie endured the space of eight dayes; such delay did greatly vexe the Prince, and on the other side, the king of China made no great haft, but at such time as he vnderstood of the Gouernour his death, doubting of that which happened. The Prince then who was advertised that the enimies army marched voto a batel, was very glad of these news, the which Axalla, who was advanced upon the walles, had declared vnto him, and brought the Embassadors

The citie of
Paguinfou
yeelded vnto
Tamerlan vpon the death of
their Gouernor

ynto the Prince, who received them verie curteouslie, affuring them on the one fide of his gentleneffe, and on the other of the power he had to punish their disobedience. The conditions were agreed upon, and there came out of the citie eighteen thousand souldiers, the inhabitants remaining in a manerall there were therin thirtie thousand soldiers at the beginning : the siege cotinued two moneths. Now the king of China in his marching received newes of the yeelding up thereof: he caused the Lieutenant of the late Governorto be punished, and many of the Captaines, but pardoned the fouldiers : he stayed in that place atteding for our marching forward, which could not bee before eight daies after he had taken order about this new coquest; the which was necessarie for him to fettle before hee proceeded any further. Our Prince canfed a minfter to be made of his foldiers having encreased their payes, and contented every one according to his defertes. Reward for The honour of taking the citie and the happie successe deferts. therein was attributed vnto Axalla, to whom was gie uen the government of the citie with the country already conquered. But he befeeched the Prince that it would please him to bestow it upon some other, and for himselfhe reserved the hope of his maister, wherein he should have part. This answere did greatly content the Prince, for he greatly defired the feruice of Axalla, for that he was a Captaine, who besides his valour, had great practife in the knowledge of Armes, and full of invention, but principallie artuch time as Axalla shilf all the question was for the belieging of any place. The in besieging of Prince offering it vnto him rather to acknowledge his cities. seruice done vnto him, then for any desire hee had to employ him in any other place then about his person.

Vpon his refufall this charge was bestowed upon the Prince of Thanais, with the title of Viceroy. Nowas I have already told you, our Prince after he had giuen fuch order as was necessarie, and advertised his friendes in all partes, and about all the Emperour, he marched forward, having contented his fouldiers, and made a generall muster of his Armie, as well of the horse as footmen, the which hee found to be diminished of tenne thousand men onely. Nowe our Prince after he had folemnlie called vpon the immortall, inuincible, and incomprehenfible God, and spent one whole day in prayer, we enterprifed to goe on forward, and to go directlie vnto the enemie, who was at Sinteba, with all his owne forces, and of all his Allies. As soone as he received newes that our Armie was passed ouer the river of chalifn, it is reported that barbarouslie he caused to be published throughout all his Campe, that euerie one should prepare himselfe vnto the Battaile, for that he was determined to stay no longer for the enemie within his owne countrie, because hee could not endure to see his subjectes spoyled any longer. But certainlie he made it manifestlie appeare, how his mischiefe and euill fortune followed him too neare, even at the verie heeles: for if that hee had drawne out the warre in length, he had gotten a great advantage of vs , having manie strong Cities, the which we must needes have affaulted, and had bene fufficient to ouerthrow vs vtterlie, and after he might have had a good bargaine of vs. For the wisedome of our Prince would not endure to leave anything behind him which might hinder vs from victuals: for great Armies cannot otherwise be maintained. Our Prince was wont to say vnto his famili-

Tamerlan bis

famiars (for he neuer boafted himfelf, and at fuch time as fortune was most fauourable vnto him, then had he most doubt) that if the king of China were so enill aduised as to offer him battaile, hee should commit a follie whereof he would repent him, being well affirred that he had braue Captaines, and fouldiers well experienced in the warres, who knewe well what belonged vnto battailes. Now the king of China marched directlie vnto vs with great magnificence: there The hing of was nothing to be feene but gold and precious Rones china hu magin his Armie : he himselfe was commonlie in a cha-rificence. riot, wherein there was fuch a quantitie of golde and rich stones, that eueric part was full of Diamonds, Rubies, and Pearles. The king of China was of the age of three and thirtie yeares, who for the most part had bene brought vp in pleasures, and not in militarie exercifes, nor vnder the bloudy enfigne of Mars , loaden with yron, boilterous and furious not with gold precions fromes , and with fuch kinde ofriches: so as he was very infolet in thretnings, brauadoes, and in defying vnto the battaile. He often faid that we had furprifed him, and had not warned him to prepare himself, and that we had stroken him without speaking The custome any word: for this is the custome of the people in those of the Chimein, parts, to do in this maner. He had two or threekings alfowith him, his neighbours and Allies, who marched with the fame preparation. The rumour of these riches gaue great courage to the foldiers, for they were couetous of just gain, as is that gotten by a battaile. So both our armies went forward each to approch the other, & there was a city yeelded vnto the Prince called Tunichenoy, the which helped our Armie greatly, fo as the Prince having well marked the fituation of the

*F3105

waters and pastures in great aboundance, in so much as we determined abiding in that place to behold the enemies countenance, who if he were so rash as to set upon him at all aduenture, this place seemed unto him verie conuenient to teach him a newe lesson in. The next day to the end we might give occasion unto the enemie for to approch nearer, we sent to summon, and at the same time to take possession of the citie of Pan-

nihu, the which in advancing forward we left a litle behind vs. The king of China had put manie men thereinto, and it was a citie sufficiently well fortified: from Tiaucheuoy to Paquinuhu there were ten leagues. It vexed the Prince greatlie, that in returning directlie vnto Pannihu he should turne his backe vnto the enemie. This was the occasion he went to content himself with this inuesting onely, for two reasons; the one to cause the enemie the sooner to approch : the other for to hinder the incursions which the might make: but it fell out much otherwise, for this matter was no sooner put in deliberation, but that Odmar who had bene arthewarre brought certaine newes that the enemies Armie was within a dayes ion ney of vs, and that the battaile in his opinion would bee the next day. The Prince foorthwith disparched one vnto Calibes, who was gone thither with 10000, horse, that hee should come vnto him, and in the meane time made prouifrom of all thinges necessarie wherewith he might prewaile for obtaining of the victorie. So he advanted

his Army within a league of the citie Tiancheuor, about noone the next day they had more certaine advertifement of the enemies comming. The Prince who had as merrie a countenance as might bee, after he had

com-

The proceeding of Tamerlans as my sowards the enemie.

commanded his Armie to take the place for the Battaile, which he had chosen in his judgement with most advantage, and having ferdowne vnto Odmar the order he would have to be observed, hee desired to see the comming of this Armie: fo fending before him five or fixe thousand horse as scouts, he advanced forward, and Calibes with him. Now there were two caufes wherefore hee marched the foremost; the one was, for that he wold judge of his enemies countenaces the other, he hoped to draw him to fight in his place of battaile the which he had chosen, and to deale in such fort as the enemie might be the affailant. So after he had seene this great confused Armie which continually came forward, he commanded Calibes to retire himfelfe as foone as they drew neere vnto him, and bring vnto him this great cloud, the which he hoped foon to disperse. So the Prince returned backe vnto his men for to affure them of the battaile: he caused all his footmen to be placed all along by a great mountaine, fo as they had but one head for to doubt. And hee planted great store of Artillerie for the guard of his footmen. I am of opinion, that the Prince had about fixe score The order of thousand footmen, whereof many we armed after the Princes the Christian maner, and all they were commanded by gainfi the king fundry Captaines; but all obeyed Axalla, who comma- of china. ded them as Generall. Our horsmen were in battaile array in a great levell plaine, having the footmen on the left hand, and on the right was the comming of the enemie, fo as vpon the least disfauour that might happen, he would retire to be affisted by his footmen. We had foure-score thousand horse: Calibes with the Scythianswere in the Auantguard, and had the commandement of thirtie thousand horse, who should receive

The beautie & viehnesse of the king of Clanas ATMY.

him at such time as he did drawe on the enemie, as he was comanded. It was deuided into three troups, each one confifting of 10000. Odmar had also 30000. horse who should affifthim. The Prince remained in the Arier-ward at the one of the wings of his footmen, which held one of his principall forces, his purpose was to suffer the three-score and fixe thousand horse to maintain the fight against the Barbarias, being led by two good Captaines, and if any of them remained the Emperor hoped after of them to have a good market, by caufing his footmen to march forward, and himselfe with who there abode twenty thousand of the best horse, which were sufficiet without hazarding his person for to give a new battaile, if so be that any disfauor should happen vnto them: for he had vnderstood that this was the custome of the kings of China, to enclose theselues within the middest of their chariots with their footmen. and not to hazard themselves but vpon the extremity: fo the enemie failed nothing at all to march directlie vnto Calibes, and all the Army marched after following of him and fetting vpon him, and he even as the Scithians are alwayes accustomed to do, with his 6000. horse in retiring gaue manie charges, killing some of them, and they likewife killing some of his men. It was a beautifull fight to fee this great Armie march, for it seemed to be twife as great as ours, therein being an infinite number of armed chariots, wherein he put his principall trust against the furie of our fouldiers; fo manie gildings of gold and filter as well in the trappings of their horses, as on their armor, that it glittered, and was of vs all much admired. The Prince who with a troupe of horse did see the Armie march after Calibes, commended greatly the maner of casting their men

men out of the rankes, for to compell this troupe vnto fight, & did fee this Armie come in good order, & he tried with his eye to note the place wher the kings perfon was having near him the Chinois Lord to instruct him, who knew well their maner of fighting. Nowe they had neither auant-guard nor battaile, but only an Arier-ward commanded by the king, and inclosed (as I have faid) with his chariots: the which being shewed vnto him by this Lord, the Prince turned himselfe vnto vs, and in our language said: Yet must wee this day Tamerlan his disperse this cloud here to gilded, & the king of China king of china, and my selfe must make a partition thereof. Now hauing seene the enemie sufficiently advanced, & judging that he had had feene them march a good league, he thought it not convenient to suffer them for to take breath, nor for to put themselves againe into their order; he fent vnto Calibes for to wil him to fer forward the fight, and that if those whom he had led with him should be weary, they should come vnto him; but it was not in Calibes power to have this commandement ouer them. For as soone as they heard this word of fighting vttered, they required the first charge, with a young Lord, who commanded over them called Ziossabanes, who made appeare vnto the Chinois to what end their flight was, charging verie fliffely vpon the foremost of the enemies, the which was an occasion to to begin the first fight. And lassure you there could not beseene amore surious thing, nor any for to fight with more defire to manifest the valor of his nation, & for to procure honor vnto his Prince. Now this endured a long houre before the Chinois had ouerthrowne Calibes. The Prince did see all pacientlie, saying alwaies, that the great multitude how confused so ever it were,

The battaile between the king of China

would carrie it away from the order and valour of his fouldiers: you could not yet perceiue any alteration in and Tanarlas the Princes countenance, aduerfitie and prosperitie were fo indifferent vnto him. Now his thirtie thousand horse were all Scithians, who observe not the same order the Parthians doe. Now before the Prince retired with his men, he did fee the first charge given . Calibes being wounded, retired himself neere vnto the Prince. having with him two thousand horse joyned together againe, and many more joyning themselves together neere vnto the Prince, who commaunded that they should cure Calibes, viewing the place of his wound, he caused him to be conducted behind his footmen, and the other which were hurt with him also. Now Calibes was not able to pierce through this Armie, being beaten back; but Odmar with almost all the Parthian horse men did handle them more roughly, for he ran cleane through them, and returned by one of the right wings of the Armie, where he fought most valiantlie, and hauing beaten them backeue within the kings chariots. hee thought that hee should not doe wisely to goabout to breake fuch forces. The King of China comming forward, and the horsmen which had bene broken by Odmar ioyning themselves together for his aid, Odmar onely remayning in the Battaile fent vnto the Prince for the footme, and for to fet forward the artillerie, and that he should affure himselfe of the victory; The Prince who had already fet forward, kept aloofe off, and sent vnto him liftie thousand footmen, with a part of the artilleric, giving charge therof vnto Axalla, who forthwith fet forward, hauing commandement to fet vpon the chariots, and to make an entrance : hee fet forward the artillerie before him, thewhich did greatly

greatlie aftonish the enemies: for the gouernors of the horses belonging to the kinges chariots could not hold them; it made also a great spoile. As soone as hee perceiued this disorder, he set forward, and came to handblowes; there were a hudred & fifty thousand me as yet about the kings person . Axalla full of courage fought fo valiatly, that they never beheld any do more branely.Odmar during this fightcharged again the horfmen who were retired vnto the kings aide, whom he put to flight. Then the Prince advanced forward with the rest of his footmen, gaue aide vnto Axalla, and came euen vnto the person of the king of China, who was as yet enclosed within a second ranke of Chariots with thirtie or fortie thousand men: andaster hee had fought two or three houres, the horsmen assisting the footmen, and they principally whom the Prince had referued, the king remained wounded within the power of the Prince, the battaile being won, and all the enemies The king of Campe forced; the fight indured eight houres, and it ded and taken was even night which faued the lives of many of the prisoner. enemies. There were flaine two kings the Allies of the king of China, and one taken prisoner: there was ine- victory over stimable riches gotten, as wel in golden vessel as preci . the king of ous stones, and the most rich and faire chariots that China. could be seene. The Prince would not see the captiued king vntill the next day, being mounted on horsebacke, and passing through the Campe of the battaile for to stay the slaughter, and to joyne together againe his men, to the end the accustomed watch might bee

kept, whereof he gaue the charge vnto Axalla; to The custody of whom he gaue likewise commandement to keepe the the king of Chiking of China within the middest of his souldiers, ha-na delinered uing bene already dressed of a wound he had received

A great flaugh ter of the Chinou. T'amerlan thankeful vnto

78

Calibes mounsed.

Ctorie.

enemies weapons, and the divertity of streamers wherwith they were decked, the which feemed vnto vs a far off as beautifull, as the diversitie of colours plentifull. But to fay the truth, the multitude was great which this king had, notwithstanding there was much differeace betweene their valour and ours: and it is reported, that he had ranged in battaile this verie day three hundred and fiftie thousand men, whereof there were an hundred and fiftie thousand horsmen, the rest on foote: the greatest part of them were rude and barba. rous people, which suffered themselves to bee slaine one vpon another, not marking their aduantage, nor hauing anie warlike knowledge, as our men haue: there were flain of the enemies some threescore thoufand. Now the next day after the buriall of the dead. the Prince having given thankes vnto God for his victorie, caused the wounded to be cured, and amongst God for bis vithe others Calibes, who by reason of the vntemperatenesse of the aire, rather then by the blow of the wound he had received, found himselfe verie ill, yet would he not omit his dutie, to commaund alwaies his Anant-guard, the which was a great pleasure vnto the Prince, forhe alone had commandement ouer the Emperours forces, being a Scithian, and greatly beloued of his nation. The Prince dispatched away thirtie thousand horse in the pursuit of one of the king of Chinas brothers, who was fled away, having joyned together againe some twelue or fifteene thousand horse. The Prince sent to summon Panniba, the which did yeeld it selse vnto him: whereupon our Armie approched neare vnto it, for to aduance our felues the further into the countrie. Nowe I forget to declare

clare howe the Prince having the next day caused his tentes to bee pitched most stately, and his guardes ordered according to his greatnesse, the principall of his Armie being also neare his person, for all the night he had remained continually on horsebacke, vntill about two of the clocke, when as they brought him a tart and his water, for he neuer dranke wine, and lay downe vpon a carpet, where he passed the rest of the the night, I was neere vnto him and neuer left him: but I neuer heard anie vaunting or boafting to proceed out of his mouth, but much bewailed the follie of this king, which would not deliuer vp that belonged vnto him, and faid vnto Odmar, who was neare Tamerlas his unto him, that his God had led him by the hand, and freely moto had given vnto him a great victorie, without the losse odmar of the of anie of his servants, at the least of them which were God. of marke: that hee could not but lament for all those whom hee had loft, accounting them notwithstanding most happie and blessed, dying in the service of their king, against such cruell and barbarous people. So then hee sent a commaundement vnto Axalla, for to bring vnto him the imprisoned king:who being come, The comming the Emperour issued out of his tents, and went to re- of the king of ceiue him. This king of China came with a verie China prisoner proud and haughtie countenance, and like a coura-perer Tameria gious man, approching neare vnto the Emperour, hee demaunded of Axalla by an interpreter, which was the Emperour, and being shewed him, hee spake fiercely vnto him after this manner: The goddes whom I worship, being prouoked against my nation & people, and conspired against my good fortune, haue made mee at this day thy prisoner : but forasmuch as it is reported ouer all the worlde, that Tamerlan

maketh warre for the honor of his nation: thou shouldest be contented that thou hast wonne it this glorie,

that the Lord of the world, the child of the Sunne, is in thy power, to receive such law as it shall please thee to prescribe him. This he said in a braue manner, and without any other humbling of himselfe. The Emperour on the other side having saluted him verie curte-ouslie, led him into his tent, & willed his interpreter to say vnto him; that everie divinity fained or true, which anie do worship and reverence, that certainly an evill matter is alwayes disagreeable vnto them, and that he yeelded willinglie vnto the immortall, invincible, and

Tamerlan his princely enter tainment and godly speech retered vnto the prisoner King of China.

veelded willinglie vnto the immortall, inuincible, and incomprehensible God (whom hee worshipped) this honor, to attribute vnto him this victorie obtained, euen as he did the cause of his euil fortune vnto his false gods whom he worthipped; that he might affure himfelfe to finde all gentlenesse and good entertainment at his hands. So having made a fignethat hee allowed of that the Prince said, with thaks vnto him, the Prince remained a certaine space after without speaking, hauing placed him neare vnto himfelfe, not contenting himselfe in beholding this Princes behauiour. He caufed his interpreter to demad of him, what he did think of the fashion observed by his people in fighting. He answered, that he accounted the victorie most affured, when as he did fee fo few men come against him, in coparison of the great Army that hee had; but that the gods had otherwife disposed thereof. When he asked whether his brother were a prisoner or slaine: hee was demanded whether he fought neare vnto him. He anfwered, that he commanded ouer his horfmen, and that hee wore the same royall garmentes that hee himselfe did. They tolde him, that he was taken. Whereupon

he

he fetched a great figh, and being demanded wherfore he was forie that his brother should bee with him and run the same fortune: he answered that all his hope of comforting himselfe in this mishap was placed in his brother, and all the good happe also of the Chinois name, therefore he greatlie lamented him, commending much the courage of his brother. Now the Prince knew of certaine that he was escaped away, and therfore (as I have faid) was Odmar gone to hinder his reuniting together. I have forgotten to declare how the riches which were gotten were innumerable: for the meanest amongst them had much gold about him, & vpon the trappings of their horse. The Lords had such store of precious stones, as of nothing more. They did bring all the prisoners before the Prince, and when the two Allies of the king of China did come, the king rose vp and did them great reuerence. Then the Prince demanded of him by an interpreter, who they were. He answered him, that they were his Allies, and that he lamented more their fortune the his owne, and that he would die with them. Now this barbarous king The crueil carthought the matter should be handled after their ma- flome of the ner, when as they put to death their prisoners, and feed chinois. of meat made of them, as some of those countries are accustomed to doe. Nowe the Prince having receiued them curteouslie, did assure them of good entertaiment: for the which the king of China did shewe himselfe greatly contented. The one of them was the king of Chiampa, the other of Canchuichina, vndervassals and tributories to the king of China. Nowe he was of the age of thirtie yeares; hee had along vi- of the king of fage, his eyes blacke and great, his beard long, the china. which he stroaked often, his nose was of a reasona-

82 ble bignesse, having a grave behaviour, and well befeeming a great king. These prisoner-kings did as it were worthip in faluting of him, and hee keeping his grauitie, only commaded them to rife fro the ground. He is furely a great Prince, and which hath had two hundred famous Cities within his kingdome. There be manie mynes of gold and filuer, much muske, and also of an hearbe which the Christians call Rubarbe. There bee in like maner within the kingdome of China fifteene verie large Prouinces, the which have Gouerners. It is reported that he hath threefore and ten kings wearing crownes, tributaries vnto him. We call this region China, the which they in their language name Tame, and the people Tangis, the which we call Chinois. This kingdome doth abound in fish, and in great numbers of wilde-foule, by reason of the great aboundance of running waters which doe ouerflowe the countrie, the which is reasonable temperate: they

abound greatly in filkes, and the meanest are apparelled therewith, having finall quantitie of woll, and not vling the fame: they have much cotten and linnen in steed thereof. The men do weare their haire long, the women combe them: they have as many wives as they are able to maintaine. Next vnto the king there is a Gouernor generall whom they call Tutan, the which was the brother vnto the imprisoned king. This is the cause wherefore he must not forsake the countrie : but he requested his brother to accompanie him vnto this Battaile, where they thought affuredlie to ouercome, and was fo wilfull, that he did appoint a Lord in his place, vpon whom the king of China did not relie fo much as vpon his brother: in so much as this made him fad, confidering the follie which he had commit-

ted,

A description of China.

ted, in suffering him to come with him, and to be both of them at one battaile. Now for to returne vnto the king of China: the Prince hauing affembled his counfell, to the end he might be aduised how he should vse his prisoners and the rest of the victorie: hee received newes by Odmar, how that the kings brother was arrived at Quanton, the which hee had fortified, and that great store of forces did ioyne themselves vnto him. This was the cause that the Prince having somewhat rested his forces, commaunded two thousand Parthian horse to conney the prisoners vnto Paguinfor and from thence after they had made abode there, to passe ouer the mountaines, and to remaine at Burda (a Citie of olde time faithfull vnto the Emperors of Scithia) and there to keepe them faithfully. This charge was given vnto Malaxen Lieutenant generall in the charge of Axalla. Then the Prince made dilpatches vnto the Emperour, and to his Lieutenantouer the Parthians, and made them partakers of this great and happie victorie, wherein had bene slaine to manie thousandes of the enemies, and hee had lost so fewe of his owne. I returne vnto the deliberation which the Prince tooke (after that hee had difcharged himselfe of much carriages, the which hee had fent with the king of China,) before hee would goe anie further forward. Nowe hee had also sent to hasten the fortie thousand footmen which should come from Sachetay, and thirtie thousand Scithian horse, making his account that they should have come vnto him, before the forces of the king of China could oppose themselues against him. So the purpole and resolution of the Prince was, that it behooved to affault Quanton, and to fhut vp, if it were

84

The historie

The proceedings of the Emperors Armie after the victory, so his refolution in the same,

possible, the kinges brother within the same, being one of the principall seates belonging vnto the king of China, and a citie greatly peopled and strong: it was fortie leagues from the place where the battaile was fought. But Odmar being advanced thither, would not retire before hee had expresse commandement from the Prince, who having fent thither, pitched his tentes round about the faid Citie: having fummoned many small cities, the which yeelded themselues wholly vnto the Princes mercie, making great lamentation for their king taken, and for the estate of their affaires, the abasement being verie great throughout all the kingdome, for all the diligence the king of Chinas brother could vie forthe quieting of their aftonished mindes, and to exhort euerie one to take new courage. Notwithstanding the gentlenesse vsed by the Conquerour made them to take all their losses with patience: and because it was also reported, that hee had vsed the king most friendlie, and all the prisoners: for the Prince cause his clemencie to bee published vnto all that would vouchfafe to cast themselves into his armes, as he would also shewe his sharpnesse vnto all those which disobeyed him, and would withstand his commandementes. For it was the Princes custome to pardon the humble, and to punish the proudthroughlie, knowing that reward and punishment are the thinges which doe greatlie increase estates. And Princes must learne this as a generall rule, that when soeuer they vse those which are rebels vnto them, as those that are obedient, they shall receive hurt thereby, because euerie one will take libertie of ill doing, feeing that the one and the other are equallie weighed and regarded by the Prince, who ought

A Maxime.

to be a just judge and moderatour of eueric ones deferts. Now our Prince had besides another maxime, Tamerlan that is, he straightly kept that which hee promised, al- fraisely obser-though his estate depended therupon, if his word were wed his proonce passed. And you must believe, that none of his mise, and kept his word truly. feruants durst be so bold, as to make request and speake to the contrarie, so as this same being spread amongst the barbarous people, they were affured when they had once his word: now you must know that this is of no finall importance vnto a victorious Prince, to make his victorie perfect. But to returne vnto my purpose, our Prince having caused praiers to be celebrated, and yeelded thanks vnto God for his victory, as his cuftom was, he caused money to be distributed vnto the Captaines for the cure of them which were wounded. He went directly vnto Quantou, having given commandement vnto Odmar to go euen beyond Quantou, to the end that the kings brother should not put any greater forces thereinto; and if it fell out fo, he should not faile to fight with them and hinder them from the fame, for his purpose was to besiege it. I will not forget to declare Embassadours how the kings brother had fent Embassadors to obtain fent from the leave for to know of the kings health, and for to fee him, kings brother leave for to know of the kings health, and for to fee him, of China, vnte the which the Prince did willingly fuffer, to the end this Tamerlan to other should not declare himselfe king, who would refue the king. have brought him more trouble then the other. He attended for the euent of Quantou, and had his eyevpon the successe of this siege. Now the kings brother hauing received newes of the affaires of the belieged, he determined (having received aide from some of his confederates, and also as soone as he had iouned together his forces) either to succourit, or to fight a battell, and came straight vnto Porchio, hoping he might make

a bridge of boates whereof there be great store in these fame countries. The Prince vnderstanding this, caused a trench to be made at the ende of the bridge, for to keepe it against the enemies: there did he place three or foure thousand men, to the end the bridge might alwaies be at his commaundement, and as he did perceiue the enemie approch, hee shewed himselfe in battell ray all along the river. This passe-time continued tenne or twelve dayes, vntill such time as the kings brother having caused a great number of boates to be gathered together, had made a bridge in a verie narrowe place of the river: whereof the Prince being advertised, he made no shew he knewe it keeping himselfe within his Campe, from whence the faid place was fome tenne leagues from vs, called Cambin. Then our scoutes brought vs word that the bridge was made, presently thereupon the Prince commaunded Odmar to mount on horsebacke with fifteene thousand horsemen, and that he should suddenly fet vpon all those that were passed ouer, and fent all his footemen after him; we fet forward all our horsemen after, the which the Emperour himselfe did coduct, having left a sufficient strength within Rochio. The Prince having confidered the time of the diligence the which the kings brother might vie in passing over his armie, together with the aduertisement which he had received, made him accordingly aduace his army, fo as we departing at midnight came thither by noone, and Odmar halfe an houre before vs, in fo much as he having marked that there were no more of them passed ouer then he was appointed to charge, he staied in hope that halfe of them would passe ouer, and also he looked for the Prince, who did fet forward, being behind behind the mountaines, which were within a league of that place, caufing some to descrie from houre to houre what the enemic did. Now beeing enformed that the halfe part were passed, the which was fiftie thousand men good, he aduertised the Prince thereof, and went himselfe vnto the fight, and finding them in very ill order, and nothing at all advertised odmar set rpof the enemies nearenesse, he gave the charge, and brother at the vtterly ouerthrew them; there remained dead vpon the passing of ariground some fiftie thousand men , but it was not fiftie thousand without great fight, strengthened with the fauour of of bis men. the water, and a great Marrish wherein they were encamped. Notwithstanding our footemen having

wonne the banke of the river, beganne also to winne the boates and to leuer them by the meanes of a great boate the which wee with diligence caused to runne downe being full of artificiall fire, so as at the same A stratagem. very time that they which were within the boate did drawe neare, they retired out of the same, having first kindled the fire within the boate, the which with a great force rushed against the bridge of boates and ouerthrew it, and where it was refisted did burne. This did greatly astonith them that were passed, to see their returne cut off. The kings brother was not yet passed vnto the other fide of the water, and he which first had gone ouer was the king of Cauchina, who was flaine at The king of the first charge fighting very valiantly, in the forefront. Cauchina stain The kings brother did fee his men flain and drowned, & could not remedie the fame. This fecond ouerthrow was of no small importance, although it was but the third part of the kings brothers armie, and that there remained vnto him as yet a hundred thousand fighting men: but there was no great hope that hee durft

present himselfe before our armie. The newes hereof being reported at Quantioufou, the Prince was of opinion that one should carrie thither the king of Cauchinas head, for he was one of the kings greatest vasfals, thereby to affure them of the victorie, and that they should not hope for any succor. On the other side, they did see Axalla who pressed them verie neere, and what endeuour soeuer they made, yet did they marke that daily they lost their honour, and that by little and little they approched neerer vnto the, in such fort that these 15. dayes they had beene continually at hand-blowes with our men. In the end they gaue knowledge vato Axalla, that they defired to make triall of the Emperours clemencie. Answere was made vnto them, that they had better occasio to trust vnto the Princes mercie at this present, then vnto their owne forces: and having by interpreters long time discoursed with Axalla, they demanded eight daies respit, wherin they might advertife the kings brother of the estate of their affaires : and that if they were not succoured within fifteene dayes, they promised to yeeld theselues, so as it would please the Prince, to keepe them in the same fidelitie that the kings of China had kept and maintained them. Axalla made answere, that he had charge from the Prince to receiue them vpon copolition, and to make them proue all gentlenesse as soone as they had veelded vnto his mercie: but for preventing of fo long delay, for that the Prince was in person within the countrie, he would fend and impart this vnto him, and befeech him for the fame: and attending therfore, they should in the mean time deliuer hostages for this purpose, and that from this time forward he did graunt them truce, vntill the Prince had signified therein his pleasure. Thereupon Axalla

Axalla dispatched one of his faithfull friends of his countrie vnto the Prince, to carrie vnto him these good newes: the which was more welcome vnto the Prince. then the ouerthrow he had given vnto the enemie, and agreed vnto all that Axalla demaunded, referring all vnto his fufficiencie and fidelitie, and relying thereuppon he would marke what the kings brother meant to do. After this last disgrace he was determined, if the enemie did not retire, to passe ouer the river, and to pursue him euen vnto the sea coastes. Three or foure dayes being spent the Prince tooke aduise for to passe ouer the river with his horsemen, but not to advance any further then 3. or 4. leagues beyond the water: only he meant to hinder the kings brother from attayning vnto the rivers foord, having received advertisement that he would passe ouer for to succour Quantoufon. As foone as the enemie vnderstood newes of the passing ouer of our army, it did greatly aftonish him, & therevpon retired ten great leagues frovs, bending towards the sea side into a hillie countrie, and vnease for our horsemen, where he thought to find place of securitie for his armie, and where the fame might be intrenched within the mountaines. And there at leafure he tooke aduise of the greatest about him, to determine what offers they might make vnto the Emperour, as well for the kings ransome, as also for to assure that which yet remained, & for to make a peace, the which must needs behad, were it by gold or filuer, feeing that bloud could doe no good therein, which had not beene spared: that there was no more to be done, and that the goddes were offended. Therfore it behooved with them to acknowledge Tamerlan, they for to fauour him, and we to ferue him: and having fent to demaund fafetie for to

The citie of Quantoufou yeelded into the hands of Axalla, who besteged the same.

Axalla his entrance into Quantousous with great magnificence.

treat, the Prince graunted so much vnto them, for such as would come vnto him. In this meane time Quantoufou yeelded it selfe into the hands of Axalla, who caused the garrison to come out of the same, received the inhabitants into the Princes protection, and they which would might remaine therein vnarmed: and he entred thereinto with the ioy of all the inhabitants, who did determine to receive the Emperor into the same with all the magnificence that might be. He caused 30000. men of war to enter thereinto, vnto who was money delivered for to maintain the there, vntill fuch time as all the footmen shold receive pay for 3. moneths duevnto them, whereof the inhabitants of Quantoufou did furnish the Prince, to the summe of eight hundred thoufand Tentins, the which do amount vnto foure hundred and fifty thousand crownes or therabout. The Prince at this present sent me vnto Axalla, whom I found feasting of his Captaines and fouldiers, staying for the comandement that I brought vnto him, the which was to remaine within Quantoufou, and to cause all his footmen to fet forward directly vnto him, the which was done by the Prince, to the end it should strike a greater terror into the minds of the enemies, who feeing all his footmen arrived, he supposed they would nothing doubt (Quantoufou being taken.) but that he would march forward, infomuch as he hoped this would greatly aduance hisaffaires, confidering the estate they were in. I returned from Quantoufou vinto the Emperour, hauing seene a beautifull and great Citie, well fortified, and wonderfully peopled, and round about it there was a fruitfull countrey. Our armie had beene two monethes and a halfe before it, and I thinke we should haue continued there one monethes longer: for therein

was no want of any thing but of men, because many of them had beene flaine fince the fiege beganne. This was the cause wherefore the Princes brother would have conducted somethither, & was the occasion that made him aduance forward. Many of our men were also dead by reason of the intemperatenesse of the aire. and the heat of sommer the which we had passed, wherwith our men had not bin accustomed: so as those souldiers which we looked for were necessarie for vs to aduance forward, if wee purposed to attempt any other thing. Axalla who remained therein, emploied all the paines he possibly could, to repaire the walles, and to winne the inhabitants good will vnto the Prince: for not one of them was departed with the Gouernour for to serue the king of China, he leading with him out of the citie, but thirteene thousand, of thirtie thousand fouldiers, fome beeing dead, the other remaining with the inhabitants vnarmed, for to receive the law of the conquerour. It was a thing very worthic the noting of their new Lord, who was to commaund them, to marke fo great lightnesse and inconstancie in forgetting fo foone him which had maintayned them, he and his auncestors by the space of two hundred yeares with great pacience and quiet, and preserved their wealth in great prosperitie. This is the cause that they which gouerne common-wealthes ought to thinke, that the peoples good will is certainely to be esteemed: but withall, they must not too much trust therunto. This was the cause that Axalla marked that. faying that hee was troubled to devise how this great multitude might be contained in their fidelitie, if wee should receive any disfavour, and commanded me to fpeake vnto the Prince, for to treat before his Armie

were any more decayed, and after that it was very neceffarie his wisdome should consider how to assure this citie in his absence, the which was so peopled, and the people thereof being so light and inconstant. Now as I have faid, there was almost a yeare spent since we began this enterprise, and our men were greatly dimini-Thed: the fall of the leafe also drawing neere, the which for the most part doth yeeld euill fruit vnto armies after their trauels, by the changing of humors, the which engender sicknesse. And this appeared alreadie within our armie, which caused the Prince to consider of many things; and not without cause, he doubted also some change within his owne countrie, the which long abfences do often cause, the honour being no lesse in preferuing of that alreadie gotten, then in conquering of the same. Our Prince also did neuer refuse honourable conditions, the which he did more esteeme being obtained by peace then warre. He thought that his conquest consisting of almost halfe the kingdome, and in making the king tributarie for the rest, he should have fufficient wherewith to bridle him, if at any time hee should deale badly, and would thereof be well aduised: and especially he hoped to assure the same so well, as their lightnesse should be throughly punished, at what time foeuer they would vie it. He did thinke it conuenient if they came vnto profitable conditions for his aduantage, euen as the conquered doe yeeld vnto the conquerors, for to resolue himselfe to border his conquests on this fide. Thus the Embassadors being arrived, who were of the kings chiefest vassals, Tamerlan received them with all humanitie, caufing his greatnesse to appeare vnto them, and therewithall the agilitie of his horsemen, to make the see with their eyes, that it would

be the destruction of the Chinois name if he proceeded any further. So having faluted the Emperor with all re- fage from the perence, they vttered their Embassage vnto him, which king of chinas was that the kings brother had fent them vnto him to Tamerlanso treat for two causes: the one, was for the liberty of their treat for peace king, the other, for preservation of their country; that deliverance. he had vnderstood of his accustomed humanity; that themselves would make triall thereof, rather then to accuse the Gods of their ingratitude towards the Chinois, repenting themselves that they did not satisfie our just demands at the first comming of our army; that they wold pay for it, the which was reasonable, and therfore, they came to receive the law of him, feeing he was the conquerour, and that nothing they should opposse against him, could cut off his good happe, they must needs be one of his limits vnto posterity. The Prince hauing heard them, the same being declared vnto him by Interpreters, hee answered them, that they had reafon to trust vnto his mildnesse, because that was alwaies more for the benefit of them that would trie it, then The answer of were his armes, and that the same was before any force to the Embasoffered vnto them, the vse of the one being more sadors. agreeable vnto him, then the other; but the endes of the warres, were for the most part enterprises for to come vnto peace, and to make those vnderstand reason. that refused the same: but seeing at this present, they defired it he would yeeld thereunto. And this was the first word of curtefie he wold pronounce at their first comming:it belonged now vnto them to offer the conditios wherewith he would acquaint his counfell. Thereupon the Prince rose vp, & caused to be sayd vnto them, that they shold deliver their offers in writing, & that present answer should be made thereunto. Thus went they out

brother vnto

The historie of the Princes presence with great ioy, and as it were af-

Conditions a-

94

fured of peace, and to recouer their former prosperities. The coditions which they offered were to leave Paguinfon & all the country beyond it, with all the fortreffes of the moutains; that they wold pay al the charges of his army, fince the day of answer made vnto his Embassadors; that they wold give two millions of gold, for their king.

greed upon besweeneT amerlan the Chi. mois.

This being presetted vnto the Lord, he made answer therunto, which was; that he woldkeep that which he had coquered within the coutry, the which was his owne justly, feeing his arms had giue it vnto himsthat he wold have the river where he was now encamped to be his frontier, stretched vnto Hochioy, Tahaucezug, Cauchio, Lulun, euen vnto Poschio bordering vpon the sea; that the king of China should pay vnto him yearly three hundred thoufand crowns, the which shold be deliuered at Paguinfou, for acknowledgment of submission vnto the Empire, as well for his fuccessors as himselfe; that they should pay fiue hundred thousand crownes in ready mony for the charge of the army; that the king of China should be delivered, and all the Chinois prisoners shold pay ransome vnto particular men that took them, except those which caried the name of kings, who should pay one hundred thousand crowns for peace with his armes; that no Chinois should be kept as slave, nor sold for such hereafter, being under the Princes obedience, that trafique and entercourse of Marchantes should be free betweene both the nations; that the king of China should deliuer his brother as prisoner, and two kings named, with twelue principall men of the countrie for assurance, who should come yearely with money for assurance of the peace. Behold the Emperors answer & his resolutio; but alas the armes of the Chinois, and their forces, were

fo weakened, that they were yet glad to heare that they should be suffered to inioy that which yet remained, they accounted al things fo certaine by loft, confidering the ill haps which on every fide did overwhelme them: their best men were dead, and they which remained astonished. The flower of their best me of war, with their king taken, two battels loft, and the two principall Citis of the kingdome taken, and the hardest passages wonne: fo as they did fee nothing but a certaine destruction of the country, if they came againe vnto the triall of armes. The king whose captiuity did greatly concerne them, could not be recourred but by peace, they were also aduertised, that great store of new forces marched forward to refresh our army, so as they did exspect nothing but their certaine destruction. Therefore they accepted of such conditios of peace as pleased the conqueror, hoping that time would bring againe vnto them their auncient liberty, and that for atime it behoued them to beare with patience the yoke of their bondage. Now the Prince had fent two thousand horse. to fetch the king of China, to the end that being at liberty, he might sweare to the peace solemnly, the which hee having performed at Quantoufou, whither the Prince caused him for to come, he brought with him vnto Paguin all the pledges, and amongst the rest, the kings eldest sonne, and his brother. The king being departed for to performe his promise, according to the treatie by him confirmed, hee was received. and as it were worshipped within his countrie, with all the ioy that might bee. In the meane time the Emperour, after he had prouided for the assurance of his newe conquest, hee left Odmar there to gouerne them, and gaue vnto him an estate of thirtie thousand

Odmar left Gouerner of

merlan.

China for T4

96

horse and fifty thousand footemen, to furnish all the fortresses and strong places, the Prince having led with him, many of the new conquered people, defiring to haue them for to dwell within his country, and to fend other Colonies in their places, to assure himselfe the better of the lightnesse of this people, having noted them to be inclined vnto nouelties. He gaue in charge vnto Odmar to make his principall abode at Quantoufou, and to fortifie well the passage: and also commanded a fortresse to be made at Dermio, the better to strengthen his borders: and after he had left him all thinges necessary, he recommended vuto him the feruices of that Lord, who had manifested vnto him his great affection. The Emperour having well tried his faithfulnesse in his affaires as they fell out, he caried with him a brother of his, vnto whom he gaue great gifts within Sachetay. Then we turned our faces straight vnto Cambalu, having advertized the great Cham of the happie successe of our affaires, wherof many sayd, he had lost the oportunity of vtterly rooting out the Chinois: but they do nothing consider, the difficulties therein as yet remaining, and that we must sometimes content our selues with the meane, and know how to preferue them, without desiring at some time extreames, whereby doth often happen fuch accidents as bringeth the losse of all, and maketh that we retaine nothing of that which we accounted most assured, for that we sought more then we should haue defired. The Prince remained in deed king of china, holding in his possession, two of the fairest and greatest Cities of all the whole Countrie, having an hundred good leagues thereof vnto himselfe, and many leffer

A good aduct tismens vnto Conquesours.

leffer Cities, having extended his borders vnto a river, by whichhe might go vnto the enemy, but they could not come vnto him without passing ouer the same: having good meanes to keep it and with aduantage. The king of China moreover was his tributary of five hundred thou- The tribute fand crownes yearely, and having the meanes at fuch faid by the king of China time as he would not performe it, to be within the space voto Tameria of foure and twenty houres within his country, and he five hundred could not come into his: fo as it was much mo re com- crowner years mendable to make this honourable treatie, then tyran-b. nously to seeke for to subdue all, & to put vnto fire and sword a whole natio, who willingly cast themselues into his armes as tributaries. Now the Princedefired aboue all that the idols which were within his conquest, should Tamerlan casbe beaten downe, and commanded the worship of one sed all the idole God, establishing the same after the forme of his owne within his concountry, for he made account that in short time all wold downe, establis be reduced vnto our customes. But the Chinois were not thing the worof that mind, & their patience was founded upon hope God. of recovering by that meanes their former liberty: but they did not weigh, that the Princes forefight had bene fuch, that he had left there the most wise and sufficient Captaine that was in his kingdome, who wold not lofe any occasion by his watchfulnesse to assure his affaires. When Odmar left the Prince, as the custome is, he humbled himselfe too much. The Prince in lifting of him vp, faydvnto him; I fee well now that thou art a Chinois, feeing thou wilt worship me euen as they do their king: the worship I require of thee, is the remembrance thou shalt continually have to do my commaundements, desiring thee to establish in my newe conquest, the honour of God, and after that, my authoritie through your faithfulnesse: you knowe this cstate

quest to be beate Ship of one

better then I, call to thy rememberance that the fword hath conquered them, and not loue or good will:therefore hope not to have them affured, whom feare retaineth, and not any loue, I recommend my service vnto thee. I did neuer see the Prince in greater griefe then now at his departure: but he was driven of necessity to employ the faithfulnesse and wisedome of Odmar. So our army wherein was much ficknesse, began to march. and on the third daie having newes of forces which came towards vs, the Prince sent them a commandemet not to come any further forward, and that they should march straight vnto Cambalu, where the Prince did suppose to find the Emperor his vnkle, who had set forward towards that place to have the good hap for to fee him. being determined to receive him at Cambula with magnificence & triumphs, as he wel deserved. Now I wil declare by the way, how Odmar being seuered from vs, all the Princes fauour was turned vnto Axalla, vnto whom he committed the whole charge of his army, in so much as Axalla although he was alwaies in great reputation, notwithstanding the same was much increased by the Prince at Quantoufou, where the Prince did trust him with the army, in so waightie an enterprise as that was, and the which he fo glorioufly atchieued : likewife the maner of entring into the kingdome of China, the intelligences he had: so as the report of his valour did flye throughout all the Empire. Calibes led the vantgard, and Axalla was in the battell neare vnto the Emperour, Two hundred who gave him the chiefest place, bestowing upon him two hundred thousand crownes yearely, for to maintaine his ordinarie expeces. Now he for his part had no defire to leave his maister at quiet, being desirous to

draw him backe againe into his countrie, to the ende

Tamerl in turned his fa-BOUT VISCO AN alla.

show fand crommes of yearely rent giuen vnto Axallaby Tamerlan.

he

he might afterwards move him to enterprise some great matter, the which might redound as well vnto the glorie of his maister, as the quiet of the Christians, of whom hee was verie carefull, whatfocuer was the cause thereof. Thus after certaine dayes journey, we receiued newes, of the Emperours ariuall at Cambula, the Prince having lefthis army in a faire countrie for to winter, where he dismissing many of our souldiers, we arrived within foure leagues of Cambain, whither all the Princes of the Emperours Court, came for to receiue him, together with al the principal inhabitants, for to gratifie our Prince for his happie voyage. The Prince having received every one according to his woted curtelie, retaining notwithstanding convenient Maiesty, he was beheld to the great contentment of all his subjects. He had with him the Empresse his wife, who had not left him in his voyage. The next day the Emperour did him fo much honour, as to come and meete him, with The meeting all the magnificence that might be. He gaue a present great Cam & vnto the Emperour his vnkle, of all the richest cha- Tamerlanas riots and fayrest horses he had wonne. And I can the City of affure you, that at fuch time as the Prince fet foote on caraio. ground, for to do reuerence vnto his vnkle, the Emperonr wept for ioy and this old Prince being on horsebacke, would have descended; but our Prince beseeched him not to do him that wrong, and with all the humilitie which he did owe vnto his Prince and Lord, he hindred him from alighting. The Emperour was verie desirous to see his daughter: he caused her chariot to be vncouered, and caused her to enter into his: but the Prince remained on horsebacke, whom the eyes of all the people could not be fatisfied with admiring. The Prince presented Calibes ynto the Emperour, and

Axalls remarded by the great Camfor his good ferrice and faithfulneffe.

making a recitall of his faithfulnesse, and the endeuor of enery one, he caused the Emperour to give vnto him an hundred thousand crownes of increase vnto his pension. Axalla was also presented vnto the Emperour, who being informed of his valor, he was received withall the best fouours that might be, and he gaue vnto him, of the revenues belonging vnto the Empire, an hundred thousand Tartarins of gold in a Principality, that he might the better declare vnto him how much he esteemed of his fedelity. This ioy and pleasure continued with vs all the winter, where the Prince hauing receined advertisment how Baiazet Emperour of the Turkes, had enterprised to joyne the Empire of Greece vnto his owne, & fully determined to befiege Constantinople: the which he vnderstanding & succour being required of him by the Greeke Emperour, he dispatched a message sent one towards Baiazet, for to declare vnto him his pleafureherein, andwarned him on his behalfe, not to by Tamerlan ento BaiaZet. trouble the Emperour Paleologue who was his confederate. Now this motion came from Prince Axalla. who had wrought this league, being of kinne vnto Paleologue, and also thrust forward with desire to maintaine his religion in Greece, where hee was borne of the Geneuois race. Whereunto being anfwered verie proudly, by Baiazet vnto our Emperour, asking what he had to do therewith, and that he should content himselfe, with enjoyning lawes vnto his fubiects, and not voto others, feeinghe was not borne his subject. This answere being made, Axalla procuredto be verie ill accepted of the Emperour, and in such for, that he determined to hinder this en-

> terprise of the stomans, not being convenient for the greatnesse of the Tartarian Empire, to suffer such a

> > neigh-

The proud an Sivere of Baia -Zet.

neighbour, who would even trouble his allies: fo as the Ambassador returned from thence assured of the Princes succour against Baiazet: who in the meane time was not idle, but continued dayly his enterprise, seeking all meanes to accomplish the same: thinking that what messages soeuer were sent vnto him, were no other then threatnings. But on the other fide also, the Prince vnto whom rest and ease was already become tedious, egged forward also by Axalla, with the increase of his glorie & name, being desirous of this enterprise, did not cease vntill the Prince did send him vnto Sachetay, for to give beginning vnto the assembling of forces fro all parts, to the end that about the spring time he might march forward. The Emperour also had received newes of the battell lost by the Greekes, and that their affaires were like to go ill, if they were not fuccoured: the which made the Prince more forward, also to hinder these Ottoman dogges (for so he called them) mad for troubling the world, Axalla sent word also vnto the Prince how all things proceeded, and earnestly moued him to depart. Now the Prince had obtained of the Emperour his vnkle an hundred thousand footmen and fourescore thoufand horse, hoping to have as many from Sachetay, befides the Lords who would accompany him for to win glory, fro who he made account also of 50000. me more that they would bring vnto him, besides the other forces. He supposed that he had abilitie to deliuer the Empire of Greece from the bodage of the Ottomans. Thus the Prince departed, leauing the Empresse with the Emperour her father, for to serue him as a comfort of his age:it was not without a hard farewell of the Empe-Heavis parrours part towardes his nephew; but more grieuous on ting. the Princes part towardes his wife, who had neuer left

ing of Tamer-1.113.

Tamerlan bis dreame.

him fince the time they were maried: but nothing withheld our Prince, where there was either glory, or meanes to increase his reputation, & profite the comon wealth: A notable say- faying often, that he was borne to this end, and that he must take in these exercises his principall delights: for euery other thing wherein he did exercise himself was but borrowed, being appointed and called of God to punish the pride of tyrants. Neither will I here omit a dreame, which our Prince had the night before he departed from Cambalu, which was, that he did fee as he thought, a great multitude of reuerent men, who put forth their hands vnto him, requiring his succour against the violence of certaine tyrants, who did afflict them with fundry kindes of tormentes: he fayd, that he did neuer see more reverent countenances, and that fome of them were apparelled in white, and others in cloth of gold, some having as it were crownes of gold vpon their heads, and it feemed vnto the Prince, that he gaue the his hand, & lift them very high. This dreame he recited vnto vs the next morning, but no body was able to give him the interpretation thereof, and him felfe thought no more of the same. Now to return againe, we departed from Cambalu accompanied with all the Citie, with all the loue and griefe of a good people towards their Prince. In like maner, the Prince during the time he abode there, vsed all kindes of liberalities and magnificences that might be, after he had received all maner of presents that can be named of every one, as a witnesse of their affection . The Prince was accompanied also with Calibes, and he comaunded the Prince of Tanais to take vpo him the state of Colonell of the footmen, the which Axalla had left: vnto whom he gaue the charge of Lieutenant generall within his armie, with

Tamertan bis iourney against the Turke.

com-

commaundement to leade his auantguard, and Calibes the ariere-ward, being accompanied with farre greater forces then ever he had in any of his armies: for they came vnto him from all parts. The Chinois Lord was licenced by Odmar to go with 20000.men of the fubiects newly conquered, being desirous to shew him self vnto the Emperour, as also for to learne our maners & fashions. The absence & separation of our maister was grienous vnto none but Odmar, not for the feare of the Chinois his neighbours, but verily for the chage of fortune. The Prince having fent him word of his purpole, he cofirmed the same, & amongst other things, he sent word vnto the Emperour, that he shouldhope for all good fuccesse therin, seeing he was created by God for to cast down the proude & raise vp the humble: the Prince also did mislike of nothing more the cruelty. I remeber wel, that whe were at China, whe he perceived this fierce nation, he fayd, I am fent to pull downe the glory of this proud man, I hope to haue a good end thereof. So we arrived leaving our forces, the which came straight vnto Ocera, where they had appointed the generall meeting of all the army, and the Prince tooke his voyage directly vnto Samarcand the place of his birth, three years Tamerlan re. being past fince he had bin there. Zamay came to meete turneth from him, and I verily beleeue a million of men, bleffing and the conquest of prayling him in all manner of fongs. All the Princes of Samarcand, the countrey also ran to visite him, he abode there a moneth. Axalla in this meane time was already at the meeting place at Ocera, who prepared all things, looking for the Princes commaundement for to go vnto him, aduertifing him often of the doings of Baiazet. I haue forgotten also to declare, how the Prince sent vnto the Moscouite to be fauoured by him in this enterprise,

The Mosesuite aileth Tamerlan against the Turke. who presently sent Ambassadours with offers of what some should please him. The Prince made demaund of sisteene thousand horse, and the payment of certaine money the which he owed, the which was graunted vnto him, and also passage through all his dominions, being very glad that he did set vpon others then on him selse, and that so great a preparation should fall

vpon them, whose greatnesse was as preiudiciall and fearefull vnto him, as it was vnto our Prince, the Ottomans at that time bringing not onely suspition vnto their neighbours, but which was much more, all the

earth was aftonished at their sudden greatnesse, and of the happie successe they had in all their enterprises, being of so small a beginning attained vnto so large an

Empire. Now this was the verie reason that moued the Emperour to oppose him selfe against the same,

thinking it much better to go and fet vpon them within their new conquestes, then for to stay vntill they

were come nearer vnto him, and should come to debate their quarrell within his Empire vnto his domage: a found deliberation; for the same tendeth vnto two ef-

fects, the one is that it destroyeth the enemies countrey, and the other, that any disfauour comming vnto him, his

countrey receiveth not thereby any astonishment, so as this enterprise was greatly for his advantage. Now our

Prince did all this through the cousell of Prince Axalla, by whom at that time all the estate was governed, & the

great authority which this man had, was not without

the enuy of duerse Courtiers:notwithstanding the readie fashion of Axalla to content every one, accom-

panied with his fingular vertues, together with fo'ma-

ny services that hee had done, did vphold him against the envious; as also for that he was no lesse accep-

table

A found deliberation.

. Axalla governed all the efrate, his commendation.

table vnto the old Emperour then vnto his maister, who did often reméber the daungers & the braue enterprises he had executed in the affaires his maister had, as well against the Moscowites, as at the rebellion of Cambalu & Catayo, & in the last conquest of the kingdome of China: fo as his authoritie was great, with this, that he was curteous and humaine, and friendly towards euery one, and who spake dayly vnto his maister of great matters, and alwayes propounded vnto him honorable enterprises, whereunto he would be the first to fet his hands, without sparing the hazard of his life at all. And although our Emperour was accompanied with great renowmed Princes, yet were they no bodie in comparison of the vertues and the greatnesse the which Axallahad gotten with his maister, whether it were in pompe, in liberalitie, and in furniture of flaues and horses: for having a a great mind & sharpe wit, he made vse thereof politikely to maintaine him felf. Moreouer he neuer gaue counfell the which he did not offer to execute, and he was happy for that they had successe according to his desire, which procured him great authority; but he had a grace beyond all this: for he was humble vnto every body, the tion of Prince which made him well beloued in humbling him felfe Axalia, (in fuch greatnesse) euen vnto the smallest. I was one day in a place when the Prince did reprehend him for this fo great mildenesse. He answered him, that it belonged vnto his maister to be stately, but for me it is my trade to play the flaue and feruaunt, and as greatnesse doth well befeeme you, so doth humilitie me, for I am not about you but for to honour you: for if you be honored I shalbe also. Also how humbly soeuer I carrie my felfe, what neede you to care fo as I ferue you well? if I should be stately, I should be odious vnto the great

men of your Court, and I should sever them from you. I will have them honor me, for feruing well of you, & not for my countenace. This answere did greatly please the Emperour, & it was a cunning to cause him to be beloued, the which fel out happily for him: for they honored him more then he would. Now for to come againe vnto the Princes purpose, we will for this time leave Axalla, whose nature I was willing to expresse vnto you, the which shall serue to give you understanding of manie things, that shalbe declared of him within this historie. So the Emperour fent vnto Axalla to come vnto him at Samarcand, for to receive directions from him for the fetting forward of his armie. Now having left by the Emperors commaundement the Prince of Thanais to commaund, he came vnto him, & cosulted with him of the order for his army: and having refolued that it was best to passe by the borders of the Moscowite, to go directly vnto Constantinople the seate of the Greeke Emrours, whither they fayd the armie of Baiazet Emperour of the Turkes did march, being alreadie come downe into Asia Minor, there was a kinsman of Axallas dispatched, for to assure the Emperour of Greece of our armies comming forward, and that great prouision of victuals was made from all parts for maintenance of the same. We departed from Samarcand, for to go vnto Ozara, where was the meeting place for all the Princes troupes: and having in that place taken aduise for his iourney, that is to say, for to know whether should be more expedient and fauorable, either to go by the coastes of Mosconie directly vnto Capha, or rather on the other fide of the fea Bachuto paffe by the skirtes of Persia. It was resolved in the ende, after sundry opinions, although the way were the longer, to paffe

Consultation
about the way
the armie
should take to
the Turkes
Empire.

passe vnto Capha for to come vnto Trebisonda and to the Georgians, and from thence to enter into the limits of the Ottomans. Then our armie after the accustomed ceremonies and prayers made vnto God, wherein Ta nerlan bis our Emperour hoped to finde his principall succours, chiefest trust. we drew straight vnto Maranis where the armie abode three dayes, looking for the forces which odmar did fend, whereof they received newes. There did the Emperour cause all his armie to be payed, and a generall muster was made. He had newes also there of the forces that the Moscowite did send vnto him : he likewise caused an infinite quantitie of victuals and the most part of his furniture to be conveyed by the sea of Bachu, there being some twentie leagues where was Bachu. want of water and victuals, through the which our armie must needes passe, causing all things necessarie to be caried by water, the which was a great commoditie vnto vs: and there was a commaundement given at all the shoares of the sea, that they should bring all the vessels for to carriethe munition of the armie: so as this forelight did greatly ease our army. The Prince wet co. Tamerlan histinually coasting the sea shoare, passing away his time ted by the way in huting, & his armie came not neare vnto him by 10. towardes the leagues, except fuch as came to feeke necessaries for the army, the which did exted it selfsome 20. leagues, it was fo great. The Prince abode at Sarafich during the time his army passed the river of Edel at Mechet, and at two or three other bridges, the which they had caused to be made; there had he certain newes how Baiazet marched Baiazet marvnto the fiege of coffat inople, having reduced vnto his o- fiege of conbediece all Bithinia, & Bursia a very noble city, the which stantinople. he caused to be fortified, & divers other Cities, vsing all the cruelties that might be, in fo much as all the adioy-

cipall worker against the reliewing of the Greeke Empire, and against Capha

the place of his matiwitie.

The govern. ment Axalla did chuse.

the rest the noble Citie of Capha, wherewith the Emperor was greatly moued, because it had first put it self vnder his protectio before the Turke; & this had bin com-Axalla a prin- passed by the meanes of Axalla, where he was borne, who was also the more offended because it was his cou-Turke for the trey, so farre forth as he sent to summo them to come & yeeld a reason vnto the Emperor of their sidelitieswherupon the Citie received a great astonishment, and the principall men of the same Citie came vnto the Prince. who sent to be informed of all; and being ready to receiue the punishment for their infidelitie, after diuerse presents by them made of very excellent Marterns & other furres, pardon was graunted vnto them, & the citie was by the Prince giue vnto Axalla for to dispose of the fame: the which he did, going thither to fee his kinffolk, and to take such order there, as he thought was for the preservatió of the Citie, as one not vngratefull vnto his countrey:and it was not without feafing vpon Tana, the which was belonging vnto the Seigniorie of Genua, of Achea and Lopefo, who submitted them selves vnto the Prince, and commaundement was given vnto Axalla to take order therein. This Lord which had refused the commaundement of the kingdome of China and offo many good Cities, did plainly shew, that there is nothing more deare, nor that a man doth more esteeme. then his countrey, whereof after a fort he now receiued possession. Behold Axalla, who in the end made there the choice of his resting place, notwithstanding the greatnesse he might promise vnto him selfe, being the fecond person in the Court of the greatest Monarke of the world: making no reckening thereof, he rather placed his hope in this litle shoare of Mar Maiore, then m

in the limits of Scithia and China, and for to fucceed after his mafter vnto all his great conquests, for that hee had all the fouldiers at his commandement, and great credite amongst all the people ouer whom his Prince commaunded. Now the army had front some time in refreshing it selfe, to the end it might be gathered together, when any neede should require; the Prince determining from hence forward to march within his Tamerlan armie, the which he had not done until this prefent, marched withhaving spent his time in pleasures, leaving the bur-in his armie., then of conducting his whole armie vppon watelle. Now as soone as we came neare vnto the holy mountaines, the Circuftians and Georgians fent vnto the Emperour for to offer work him all the helpeland affiffance they could for his journey. Nowe they be Christians and a very great Nation, who have beene alwayes tributaries vnto the Grecian Emperour, acknowledging this Empire ever fince they were conquered by Pompey. For these Nations, being part of those overwhom the great Mithridates raigned, at fuch time as Pomper subdued them, they were very defirous of the comming of this great power, the which feemed to be fent from beauen for to deliner the Grecian Empire from the cruelt bondage of the Octomens dxalladrew many of this people vnto the Princes feruice, who are greatly efteemed for their brane courage and ftrength, beingall of them tall men, verie beautifull, wearing long of the Georgihaire they are verile expert in warres and haue often ans with their refifted the power of the Ottomans, by reason of the advantage they have within their countrie, the which is hard to come vnto, they (for the most part) vpon the first rumor of warre, burning all their houses, and making verie great waftes to hinder the enemies, and by

foeuer that shall come to affalt them. The Prince tooke great pleasure to beholde these faire people, and was very glad to heare of their valour, and carefull to prouide that they should not be injured in anie thing; at this present time they were vader the Empire of Trebisonda, the which the Grecian Emperours poffeffed. The Prince was every where received verie friendly, and they brought unto vs all the helpe of victuals that might be, to supply the want of our armie. Here had he certaine newes of the fiege that was before Constantinople, where the Emperour was flux vp, and all his estate brought vnto great necesfitie, Baiazer having a very great and mightie armie, who neither beleeved, nor once thought that we would come uppon him , fo exceeding barbarous was hee. that he would not endure anie man so much as to freake onely vnto him of our armie, as despising it, he was for proud: and there he caused all the bordering people publickely to bee forbidden, to make any vowes and prayers for our prosperitie. For I will declarea truth withat wee marched with such order, and the fouldiers having fuch commaundement of that none of the people where wee passed, were injured in the paffage of our armie, inffice raigned fo amongst vs. Infomuch as if a fouldier had taken but an apple. he was put to death, and this was severely observed ouerall, a thing viuall and especially in this journey, the which was the onely cause of overthrowing the tyrannie of the Ottomans, and of this proud Baiazet. So we arrived at Bachichiche, where the armie refreshed it selfe for the space of eight dayes. Vnto this place came the Embassadors of Guines, vnto the Emperour,

Notable inflice amongeft the Tarksrians

perour, whom the Prince did greatly reverence for his holinesse. The saide Embassadors offered on the behalfe of their maister, all affistance and ayde vnto this enterprise, and brought faire horses vnto the Emperour the which their maister had fent vnto him, with affurance of good successe in his enterprise: for this foresaid Guines did prophesie, and was a great A- Afrologian. strologian. The Emperour seemed greatly to honour this Embassage, and sent vnto the saide Guines great store of rich furres, and vessell of gold, & whilest we foiourned in that place, the armie made a generall mufter, and were payed, as well the horsemen as the footmen, the Princehauing made an oration vnto them) as his custome was, at such time as his souldiers made their generall muster) and informed them the manner he would have observed in the fight, to the end they might observe the military discipline, whereof he was verie curious with his Captaines. And also vpon this same day it was permitted vnto euerie souldier Thecustome of for to behold him with more boldnesse then on other ans towards dayes, for as much as he doth for that time lay a- their Emperor. fide his Imperiall Maiestie, to humble himselfe, and become familiar, so farre foorth as to exhort his fouldiers vnto vertue. So the Emperour after he had caufed generall prayers to be published, wee departed from Bachiebich, and they reckened that there was in our army three hundred thousand horsemen, & fiue hundred thousand sootme, of all kinds of Nations. The Emperor was aduertised that the Ottomans were become masters of all Greece, in fo much as the Emperor was of opinion, that Baiazet would passe ouer into Europe, whe he shold perceive that he approched: at the least wise the reason of war made him judge that he wold do so:but it fel out

farre otherwise: for as soone as we had gone beyond the

Georgians, and were come vnto Buifabuiche, Axalla whom the Prince had not seene in eight dayes, because he ledde the head of the armie; came vnto the Emperour knowing verie well, that he could not bring vnto him more acceptable newes then hee did bring, the which was that Baiazet had raised his siege for to come and defend his new conquest, and that it was a most certaine thing, that he was refolued to come vnto a day of battell: that he had caused all his forces to come out of Greece, as many of them as he could drawe from all partes, trusting not vppon the multitude, but rather in the boldnesse and experience of his fouldiers, who were well trayned up in the warres. This did greatlie reioyce the Emperour, but yet it was not with insolencie of vaunting, but rather with the countenance of a personage, who judged the euentes of battels to be ordinarily doubtfull. And hee fayd, that a small number well conducted, is oftentimes victorious. We soiourned three dayes at this Buisabuiche, and we caused our fouldiers continually to advance forward, and to passe ouer Euphrates, for to find better meanes to maintaine our armie vppon the spoyle of the enemie in attending their comming, rather then vppon our owne selues, or on our Allies. From that place the Emperour did dispatch vnto the Emperour his vnkle one of the greatest fauourites he had about him, for to certifie vnto him of the deliverie of this noble Citie of Constantinople, and how the Ottomans came fully refolued to give battell; and for to pre-

uent dangers, he gaue comandement that they thould keepe the borders strong, & all his forces on horseback vpon the enemies side: for often times as in prosperitie

all

Tamerlanhis faying of bat: tels.

all your neighbours do smile vpon you, and encline towards you: so whensoeuer an ouerthrow happeneth, euery one fetteth vpon you, & do help to spoile you. For this cause shold wise Princes assure well that which they Agood adverdo alreadie possesse, least the victorious enemie pur- Princes. fuing his good fortune, take from you the meanes to raife your felfe vp againe. Our Emperour had alwayes this wisedome, when such blowes happened, for to aduertise his countries to stand vppon their guard, rather then to publish vnto them his victorie. So wee departed from thence after the Prince had affembled all the principall men of his armie, to impart vnto them his purpose, and for to receive counsell of them, the which his courtesie did vse of custome, that made him to be beloued. For the farther you were from him then did hee most honour you: there were so manie feuerall Nations within our armie, fo many Captaines fent vnto him for his fuccour, and then was the time when he principally was humble, and layd afide his gravitie, feasting them for the aide and succour they gaue vnto our armie. Amongest the straungers this Chinois Lord did ordinarily receive great honour of the Prince, who was alwayes wont to fay, that the vertue of Axalla, and the love of this Lord towards him, had made him Lord of the fairest kingdome of Asia. The Emperour was verie desirous to acquaint and instruct this Lord with the manners and fashions of those people by whom we passed, for he was alwayes neere vnto the Emperours person; and all the forces he had coducted vnto our armie, wherin the Prince made Thew to put great confidence; they had marched with vs these two monethes, and carried themselues very well, as all our other forces did, victuals being there in

The causes of

Tamerlans

the Turkes.

114

great plentie, that which gaue vs fo much thereof, was the great instice therein observed. So our armie came vnto Garga, where it passed the river Euphrates, the anantgard at Chinferig; and the generall meeting of the armie was appointed to be at Gianich, the which did yeeld it felfe: and there had wee newes that Baiazet his armie was neare vnto vs, within some thirty leagues, which caused vs to march more close. All the cities yeelded, the Emperor receiving them graciously, and those which refused obedience, were cruelly punished, especially such inhabitants as were Turkes, but the Christians set in full libertie, under the name of the Greeke Emperour Emanuell, whom the Emperour would wholly gratifie, Axalla having received this commaundement from the Prince: so he caused them to sweare fidelitie vnto Emanuell, his purpose beeing to fet him againe into his Empire, and to punish warre against this Baiazet for being so rash, as to enterprise to destroy fo flourishing an Empire, as that of the Greekes his Allies. Now the Emperours quarrell was just against this proud lightning from heaven, especially in respect of his execrable cruelties hee vsed against all fexes and ages, vsurping an Empire the which had fought all possible meanes to make peace with his Armes: but he soone broke it, and falsified his faith vnto this poore Emperour, according as he found the meanes by litle and litle, to vsurpe almost all from him, there remaining no more vnto him, but some small townes belonging vnto his Metropolitan Citie, the which he had also besieged. It was then an honourable thing, for the Emperour to deliuer this noble Empire from such great tyrannie, an Empire so famous in the world, and a citie fo auncient, out of the hands

of

of so wicked and accurled an off-spring. This was the cause that made the Emperor to hope for to have God, his great God for an helper in this enterprise. But before I beginne, I am desirous to speake a word of the vprightnesse of the Princes cause, and also for to note the worthinesse of his courage, in giuing helpe vnto the weake, and punishing of the proud, representing by fuch deedes, the image of the divinitie, the which should be marked in Princes, in vpholding the weake ones, and those that require succour against such oppressions. So Godbeing with vs, the armie fully replenished with joy and hope, we departed from Gianich. Axalla who was in the auantguard, having commaunded foure thousand Parthian horse for to get Foure theusand knowledge of the armie, under the charge of Chianfon Parthia horfe Prince of Ciarcian, commaunding him to put all vnto fent to deferie. fire and fword, and also to bring word vnto him of the place where Baiazet was, and what countrie that was beyonde Sennas; and if hee could learne anie thing thereof, he should make relation thereof vnto him. This Captaine was of great reputation, and next vnto Axalla, he had the commanding of the auantgard in his absence: this man sent before him a Parthian light-horseman with fine hundred horse. So hee had not ridden tenne leagues, but they heard newes of the armie, and having furprised Sennas, they vnderstood there the estate of the Turkes armie, the which was at Tataya, and marched forward. The which being certified vnto the Emperour, commandement was giuen vnto them, not to retire from that place, vntill they did see the arrivall of the enemie, and thereof to giue aduertisement euerie houre: the Prince determining to passe on no further, having seene a faire

plaine, and a countrie of aduantage for the order of his battell: for he knew that he had to deale with people expert in warres, and which were accustomed to fight against the Christians, who are verie active and war-like people, who wanted not the knowledge of war-like stratagemes. They knewe also, that his armie was greater then Baiazets: but it was yet of diverse parts, so as it behooved to be well aduised, for it was not against the Chinois soft and effeminate people, but against fouldiers, well acquainted with all manner of fights that are to be fought. Then the Emperour did not omit any vigilancie for to keepe his aduantage, Axalla was fent for by the Emperour to come and accompanie him for to view the faid place, and to confider whether it would be for his aduantage, and to have his aduise. This place is between the sea & Gianche on the fide of Senas bouded of one fide with a litle river which runneth into Euphrates. And he was aduised to keepe Sennas as long as he could possibly, and sent word vnto thosewhich were within the same, to set it on fire when as they shold withdraw themselves from thence, to the end that the enemie shold not have a defire to encamp therein: but should come forward nearer vnto our armie into these plaines, the place which we defired to fight in, because were stronger in horsemen then the Ottomans. Thus behold this great armie of Baiazet encouraged vnto the battell, who thought to have furprised our men within Sennas, but as soone as they drewe neare, our men set it on fire, and the greatest part retiring, there remained fome hundred horse to performe the same, who retyred themselues in verie A fraiageme. great disorder. Now the Prince of Ciarcan had deuided his men into two troupes, & giuen comandement vnto

the

the first troupe, that as soone as they perceived the enemies to purfue the hundred horse, they should receiue them, and retire iointly together. Now hee had the rest of his power in a valley neere vnto a wood, and having suffered some two thousand of the enemies horse, Turks auant-currers to passe by him, he charged them behind, and fought with them, they not fighting but flying as foone as they did fee themselves preffed:many were flaine, and manie were taken prisoners. This was the first time we fought, and carried away the victorie: all the prisoners were sent vnto the Prince, amongst the rest the Bassa of Natolia, who led this troupe, of whom the Emperour earnestlie demanded, what caused Bajazet so litle to esteeme him, as to shew so great contempt of his Armie, and that hee should find that he was well able to punish his pride. The other answered, that his Lord was the Son of the earth, that A proud anhe could not indure a companion, that hee furely was for of a Baffa astonished, how he from so far had enterprised so dan- made vnto gerous a journey, to hinder the fortune of his Lord, in whose fauour the heavens did bend theselves, because they were not able to withstandhim, that all the round world did subject themselves vnto him, and that hee comitted great folly in going about to refift the fame. The Emperour answered, I am sent from heaven for to Tamerlans punish his rashnesse, and to teach him that the proud Bassa. are punished of God, whose principall action is to cast downe high things, & to raise vp the lowly: at the least yet I haue already constrained thy maister to raise his fiege from before Constantinople. And moreover, thou hast already felt (although I lament thy mishap) what the valour of my Parthian horse is against thy Turkish. Doest thou think (changing of his speech) that thy ma-

yea, affuring you that there is nothing hee more defireth; and I befeech you that I may acknowledge your greatnesse in giving me leave to affift my Lord at this Battaile. The Emperor faid vnto him; I give thee leave, go and tell thy Lord that thou hast seene me, and that I will fight on horseback in the place where he shal fee a greene enfigne. The Baffa did fweare, that next vnto his Lord he vowed his service vnto him. Then hee returned, and declared vnto Baiazet how hee had feene Tamerlan, reciting vnto him all that he was willed to declare. Of this (faid hee) I will make triall, and I beleeue he will acknowledge his follie before the match be ended. The Bassa did not forget to publish ouer all, the mildnesse of Tamerlan, his greatnesse, and curtefie, declaring that he did fo farre extend his curtefie as to give vnto him a verie faire horse, although he might well thinke that it was to fight against himselfe. So the next day Baiazet his Armie drew neare vnto the fight of ours, the which marched two leagues : and wee encamped within a league the one of the other. All the night long you might have heard fuch noise of horses. lans army paf- as it seemed the heavens were ful of voices, the aire did forefound, and every one was defirous to have the nightpaffed, for to come each one vnto the triall of his valor. Vnto the Scithian nation, the which is desirous of goods, they propouded the great riches they should get by the victory ouer the Ottomans. Vnto the Parthia nation ambitious of rule, the honor and glory of their nation, being conquerers of them, who only were able to take from them the Empire of Asia. The Christians who made the fourth part thereof, affured the felues to conquer their greatest enemie. Behold how every one fpake

sed the night before the battaile fought against the Turke.

spake during the night time, according to his humour. The Prince this night went through his Camp hearing all this, & was very glad to fee the hope that every one of his foldiers did conceine already of the victorie; & I being neere him, and he did me the honor to tell mee, that at the time he fought the battaile against the Moscouit, he did heare all the night long all kinds of longs, the which refounded in his Campe, feeing in a maner no bodie sleepe: I hoped then (said he) to haue some good hap, and I trust to receive the like nowe. Now after the second watch the Prince returned vnto his lodging, and casting himselfe vpon a carpet, he meant to sleepe: but the desire of day would not suffer him for to fleepe; hee then commaunded me to give him a booke, wherin he did reade: therin was contained the the lives of his fathers and grandfathers, and of other valiant knights, the which he did ordinarilie reade : he called me, having light vpon(in reading) the discourse of a battaile that his grandfather had loft against the Persians, the which he had thought to have gotte (very vndiscreetly)having affaulted his enemie, many aduantages being propounded vnto him, whereof he might haue made good vie, all which he neglected, trusting vnto his owne valor and that of his fouldiers. And hauing ended his speech, he commanded me to reade the fame before him, and faid vnto me, I alwaies reade this Tamerlan bis before I begin a battaile, to the end I shold not so much abattaile, trust vnto the Lyons skin, wherin I wrap my arme, that I shold not serve my self with the Foxes, to wrap therwith my head: for thus (faid he) my gradfather was in a place of aduatage, & he wet out of it to feek his enemy, who was lodged strogly, & what soeuer his men said to him, he went on headlong, shutting his eares against

all the counsell and aduise of his scruants, and demanding of me whether it were day, hee caused the great Chamberlaine to be called, and commanded him to to cause his trumpet to be sounded, and that his horse should be ready: and having a litle slumbred, he gave commandement that Axalla should be sent for, who came vnto him with other Lords and Captaines, the chiefest of the Armie, with whom after he had confulted of the order of his battaile. Hee mounted on horsebacke, and sent euerie one for to make themselves readie to do the like: at the same instanthe received newes that the enemies Armie marched forward, and came to take his ground for the battaile. The Emperour defired to fee him march, that according to his order hee might marshall his owne : and having caused three thousand horse to aduance forward, vnto whom he had given in charge to beginne the skirmish, himselfe aduanced forward to lodge euerie man in fuch places as he had foreseene to be most for his advantage. Now he feeing the Turkish footmen march, whom they do call lanizaries, the which were placed in the middest, and vpon the two fronts, two great squadrons of horsmen, the which seemed to be thirtie thousand horse, & another which advanced and covered the batallion of the the Ianizaries. He thought this order to be verie good, and hard to breake, and turning himselfe vnto Axalla, who was neare vnto him, hee faid, I had thought to haue fought on foote, but it behooueth me this day to fight on horsebacke, for to give courage vnto my soldiers to open the great Barallion: and my will is, that they come forward vnto me as foone as they may: for I will aduance forward an hundred thousand footmen,

fifty thousand vpon each of my two wings, and in the

mid-

The maner of the march of the Turkish feetmen.

The order of Tamerlan his battaile.

dest of them forty thousand of my best horse. My pleafure is, that after they have tried the force of those me, that they come vnto my auantguard, of whom I will dispose (& fiftie thousand horse more) in three bodies. whom thou shalt command, the which I will affift with foure-score thousand horse, wherein shal be mine own person, having an hundred thousand footmen behind me, who shall march in two troupes; and for my Arierward fortie thousand horse, and fiftie thousand footmen, who shall not march but vnto my aide. I will make choise of ten thousand of the best horse, whom I will fend into euerie part where I shall thinke needfull within my Armie, for to impart my commandements. Ouer the first fortie thousand the Prince Ciarcian commanded:ouer the formost footmen was the Lord Synopes, a Geneuois, kinfman vnto Axalle, and he which was his Lieutenant ouer the footmen, a Captaine of great estimation. That ouer which the Prince Axalla commanded, confifted of five squadrons of horfmen, Bajazet his Armie feemed faire and great, which was advanced continuallie forward towards vs. who stirred not one whit from the place of the battaile. There were indeed many light horsmen, as wel Scithians, Parthians, as Moscouites, who left their ranks, and Thot arrowes, and brake lances betweene the two Armies. There was a spie who brought word that Baiazes was on foot in the middest of his lanizaries, where he meant to fight, that hee did not forget to mount on horsebacke, giving order over all for the wants of his Armie: but purposed to fight in the middest of those Ianizaries, who are a number of trustie men, brought what the vp in exercises from their youth to all maner of war- Turks I and fare, and chosen out of all nations, the fairest and stron-

gest men, so as they are inuincible. By this bringing vp the which they have had together, they do fight with a great force and courage for their Prince and Lord, who being in the middest of them, they are as in a halfe circle within the Armie. Now they were thirtie thousand men in this order, wherein Baiazet put his principall hope:he had many other footmen, but gathered together of all forts. His battaile of horse was verie faire . amounting vnto the number of an hundred and fortie thousand horse, well exercised in all maner of fightes. The Soldan of Egypt having aided him with thirtie thousand Mammelues, very good horsmen, and with thirtie thousand footmen. Their Armie in that order feemed almost as great as ours: for they were not fo knit together as we were, our forces being directlie one after the other, and theirs all in a front. So the enemies Armie aduanced forward continually with an infinite number of cries, and ours was in great filence. After that common prayer was ended, the Emperour himselfe aduanced continually forward, beholding the first charge given , and caused Axalla to set forward after he returned into his order, continually exhorting his men before he left them. There could not be feene a more furious charge given, then was performed by the Ottomans upon the Prince of Ciarcian, who had commandement not to fight before they came vnto him:there could not have bene chosen a fairer plain, and where the skilfull choise of the place was of lesse advantage for the one then for the other, but that we had the river on our left hand, the which was some aduantage for the Emperour, having given commandement, that in any case they should not lose the same, & that the enemies, whatfocuer came thereof, should not

not win it: this he did for to have the advantage of the hand in fight . The Emperor, who about all Maximes Tamerlan bis of watre, did vie to deale in fuch maner, that the ene-principall mie might be the first assaulter, he had straightly commanded the which were appointed for the first charge, to fuffer the enemie for to give the onfet. Nowe (as I haue already declared) this young Prince of Ciarcian with his fortie thousand horse was almost wholly ouerthrown having fought as much as he could but he en- The battaile tredeuen into the middest of the Ianizaries, where the betweene Taperson of Baiazet was, putting them in disorder, where ince. he was flaine. About this time Axalla fet ypon the with the Auargard, where as he was not in any fuch danger; for having surprised one of the enemies wings, he cut it all in peeces, & his footmen comming to joine with him, as they had bene commanded, he faced the Batallion of the Ianizaries. The Prince feeing the charge Axallahad vpon his arme, fent ten thousand horse fro his battaile for to succour him, and knit together the maine battaile of Axalla, and to give once againe a charge vpon another Batallion of footmen, the which did shew it selfe, and came to ioine with and strengthen that of the Ianizaries, who behaued themselves valiantlie for the fafetie of their Prince. This fight continued one houre, and yet you could not have feene anie scattered, fighting resolutely the one against the other. You might have seene the mountaines of horfes rush one against another, the men die, crie, lament, and threaten at one yerie time. The Prince had patiece to see this fight ended, & when he did perceive that his men did giue place, he sent ten thousand of his horse to ioyne againe with the ten thousand appointed for the Arierward, and commaunded them to affift him.

a bardine

nt on massing

at fuch time as hee should have need thereof. At this verie time the Emperour chargeth, and made them give him roome, causing the footmen to affault, over whom the Prince of Thanais commanded; who gaue a furious onset vpon the batallion of the Ianizaries. wherein was yet the person of Baiazet, who had sustained a great burthen. But the multitude, and not valor, did preuaile; for as much as might bee done in fight; was by the lanizaries performed, for to preferue the person of their Prince, But in the end the horsemen. wherein was the Emperors person, gaue a new charge, and his Auantguard was whollie knit againe vnto him. he renewed another forcing, and was fullie victorious. Baiazes having retired on horsebacke out of the troupe of lanizaries wounded, fell aliue into the hands of Axalla, vnto whom he yeelded himselfe, supposing it had bene Tamerlan : then Axalla feeing him fo followed, (being for a time not knowne but for some great Lord of the Ottomans) twentie thousand horse did not fight at all, but only in purfuing the victorie, and they made a great flaughter. The Prince had his horse flaine viider him with the blow of a lance, but he was foone remounted againe on horsebacke. This day the wisedom of the Emperor gaue the victorie vnto his fouldiers : for the judgement which he had in tyring of the ftrong forces of the Ottomans, was the fafegard of his. For if all had gone vnto the battaile in one front, furely the mutitude had put it selfe into a confusion but this maner of aiding his men made enerie one profitable. The Emperor judging (like a great Captaine) of the need

that eueric one of his fouldiers had, fo that this manner of proceeding was the getting of the victory. They accounted threefcore thousand men flain of the Otto-

Tamerlanhia notable victory obtained againft BaiaZes wherinhe was taken prisoner.

Tamerlan his wisdom the cause of the victory, wherin persormed.

mans, and twentie thousand of ours, The Prince of Tirzis was flaine as I have faid: the head of the Georgians flaine, Calibes was verie forriehee had fo eafie a reckening in his Arier-ward, being very couragious, and a gentle knight: the Despote of Seruia was taken prisonerer, who did accompanie Bajazet, and was a Christian: they gave him this day of battaile much reputation. The Emperour gaue vnto him verie good entertainment, reproouing him, for that he did accompanie Baiazet against him, who did come in fauour of his Emperour. He answered him, that it was not according to his dutie, but the prosperitie of Baiazet, vnto whome it seemed, that all the world did bend for to subject it selfe ynto him, and that his safetie had caused him to let forward. The Emperor presentlie therupon gaue him leave to depart at his pleasure. He tooke care to get into his hands Baiszet his childre: he gaue commandement that Baiazet should bee cured, and after brought before him who at fuch time as he was there, Baiazet neuer made any shewe of humility. The Emperour Tamerlan, faying vnto him, that it lay in him to cause him to lose with his pride. his life; he answered: Doit, that losse shall bee my happinesse. And demanding of him what made him forash, for to enterprise to bring into subjection so noble a Prince as was the Emperour of the Greekes. He answered him, the desire of glorie and rule. Wherfore doest thou (said the Emperour vnto him) vse so great crueltie towards men, so farre foorth that neither thou nor thine do pardo either fex or age? This do I (anfwered he) to give the greater terrout to my enemies. Then faid the Emperour, so shalt thou receive the like reward: and causing him to bee conveyed againe out of his presence, he turned vnto his followers, and faid,

Tamerlan his faying of BaiaZet.

behold a proud and fierce countenance, hee deserueth to be punished with crueltie, and it is necessarie that hee bee made an exemplarie punishment to all the cruell of the world, of the inst wrath of God against them. I acknowledge that God hath this day delinered into my hands a great enemy, we must give thanks vnto God for the same : the which was performed, being yet day: for the battaile was wonne at foure of the clocke, and there was as yet fine houres of daylight. The children of Baiazet were brought before him: he caused them to be vsed curteouslie, and as the children of an Emperour. The next day he commaunded the dead to bee buried: they found the Prince of Tirzis dead in the middest of the Ianizaries, where he remained enclosed. The Emperour did greatly lamet this young Prince, who was his kinfeman, and would have bene one day worthie for to do him great service. In that battaile there died manie Captaines, & almost all the chiefe of the Ottomans. This was a great Battaile, the which was fought from feuen vnto foure of the clocke, in such fort that they knew not vnto whom the victorie did incline. Our Armie stayed vntill the next day, every one causing his friends to be buried. The Prince of Tirzis was embalmed, and conveyed with two thousand horse vnto Samarcand vntil the Emperour returned. All the other dead bodies were buried at Sanas with all the honour that might be. Axalla was much grieuedfor his kinfman, because hee was verie well beloued of the Prince: his charge was given vnto one of his brethren who was verie famous; in fighting this same day, wee might judge the events of the matters of the world. Behold this Emperour Baiazet, who was, as he thought, superior to fortune, which

which in an instant found himselfe and his estate by one battaile onlie ouerthrowne euen vnto the lowest place, and at such time as he thought least thereof. He vsed to say, that he was justly punished, for defpiling the multitude we had, for the affurance that hee had in the valour of his horsmen, and especially of his Ianizaries. Hee was three dayes (as they re-The deftaire port) before he could be pacified, as a desperate man, of Basages affeeking after death, and calling for it. The Em-ken prifoner. perour did not vie him at all curteouslie, but caused finall account to bee made of him: and for to manifest that he knew how to punish the proud; vpon festinall dayes, when as he mounted on horseback, they brought this proud man vnto him, and hee ferued BaiaZet Tahim in steed of a foot-stoole : this did hee for to ma- merlans footnifest the follie and arrogancie of men, and how inflie foole to mount God had humbled him. The next day the Prince on horsebacke. marched directlie towardes Burfia, whither all the remainder of Baiazet his Armie was retired, with the Bassa Mustapha. All the countrie yeelded vnto vs. and the Prince caused all the holdes and fortresses to be ouerthrowne and destroyed, and punished all those which were so euill aduised as to stay vntill they were belieged. Ihad forgotten to declare, how hee caused the Prince of Tinzis bodie to be accompanied with divers prisoners chained & tied together, whom he did fend vnto Samarcand, the which the Prince had determined to make great, for a perpetual memorie of his greatnesse. Euen so had hee greatlie peopled it Tamerlan his with people of China, which had bene taken in the pollicie for to Battailes, and of those likewise which were taken out encrease bis ciof the two great Cities, Paguinfou, and Quantoufou. Nowe this battaile did bring great aftonishment

die resisted vs, euen vnto Bursia, whither this armie was

Axaila crueil Otto nans for the delivery of

fled, and therein were also two sonnes of Baiazet verie young. Axalla being alwaies aduanced forward before our Armie, with fortie thousand horse, and an hundred thousand footmen without anie carriages, who hindred the enemies from joyning themselues againe together: and he made a cruell warre vpon the Ottomans, deliuering the Grecians from the tyrannie of Baiazet. He approched neare vnto Bur sia, where the Ottomans did not stay the comming of Axallas Armie. but only they which could not run remayned behind. Baiazet his two fonnes were fent unto the Greekish Emperor for to bring them vp, & to have mercie vpon them; the rest went vnto Gallipoli, for to go vnto Andrinopoli, the which they held, having conquered it from the Grecians. Now the Prince (for to returne vnto my purpose) dispatched towards the Emperour his vnkle. and vnto the Empresse his wife one of his familiars, called Lieban, Captaine of his chamber, for to carrie him newes of this victorie, and to joyne it also vnto all the rest. Hee sent vnto him Baiazet his sword and bowe, and the caparifons of his horse, the which was esteemed to be worth aboue two hundred thoufandduckats. You may eafilie thinke that Prince Lieban was well entertained of the olde Emperour, and of the young Princesse, bringing word vnto them,

that all the world did bend it felfe to make our Prince victorious, who furely received these victories from God without infolencie, & at such time as he sent him most glory, then did his men note him to bee least puffed vp. Hee was never bolde, but in the day of bata taile, and on the ceue for to commaund scuerelie, and

with

Profents fent by Tamerlan vnto the great Chambis rnkle

against the

Greece.

with greater maiestie. To tell you what hee was in adversitie, I did neuer see him in that estate : but it is to be thought, that they which be not infolent in profperity, are not faint-hearted in advertitie. So our victorious Prince marched directlie voto Burfia, loaden with spoiles and Trophees which he daylie got, departing from the Cities which did come and yeeld themselves vnto him; therein obseruing the same manner of proceeding the which we did in the coquest of China; they which did yeeld vnto him without fighting, were well vsed, and the obstinate well punished, the Prince knowing that reward and punishment are the moderators of common-wealthes, the one to be vied towards the good, and the other towards the euill. In the end we received newes by Axalla, that hee had received Burfia in the Emperors name, and how the inhabitants therof had punished the garrisons of Baiazet, having driven them away, and flaine manie. He fent word also vnto the Prince, that the Embaffadors of the Greekith Emperour Emanuel were come vnto him, the most honorable persons of his Court, and that he had staied them from pailing any further. The Prince fent word, that they should stay for him in that Citie: so we arrived in short time, and all the inhabitants of the Citie came to meete the Emperour bare-headed, in token of bondage: and the Prince entered into Burfia with great magnificence. Axalla with the Embassadors came to meete him, whom the Emperor received with all the honor that might be, and thewed vnto the all his magnificence, and the order of his Armie, whereat they wondered: for our Armie resembled a Citie, for the order that was therin, the which did bring vnto vs plenty of all kind of victuals & marchandize. The Embassage

The effect of the Greek Emperors Embaffage unto Tamerlan. of the Greeke Emperour was, that he submitted all his Empire and his person vnto our Emperour, and that he wold be vnto him a most faithful fubicet and vasfall. himselfe and his subjects, and that hee would bethinke him how to dispose of his goods, the which he offered thereby as his owne, and that he was bound for to doe this, for that he was deliuered by him from the yoke & bondage of the most cruell Tigre that might be; that the farre countries he had passed, and the discommodities he had endured, and the loffe of his men, could not be recompenced, but by the offer of his owne life andhis subjects, the which he did dedicate for ever to his service; that he should alwaies find therefore such faithfulnesse as so great a bond towards him doth deferue. Besides, the so many vertues & rare gifts, which made his name famous throughout all the world inhabited, did bind him vnto the fame; that he would attend him in his chief citie, for to deliuer it into his hands as his owne, and all the Empire of Greece, ouerwhich he commanded, to cause the same for to obey him. Nowe the Greek Embassadors looked for no lesse then to fall into bondage, thinking that to be fo great which they did offer, & a morfell so delicate, that it would not bee refused, especially of a conquering Prince, as was Tamerlan; & that accepting therof in mildnesse & friendship, was the best bargaine they could make therin: but they received answer far otherwise: for the Prince with a mild countenance answered them; that hee was not come fro fo far a cuntrie, nor had taken fo much paines to conquer countries; that it was too base a thing for him to put himselfe into so great trauaile and dangers, but rather to win honor, and thereby for to make his name famous and glorious vnto all the world: therefora

The worthy answer of Tamerlan roto the Greek Embassadors,

fore would hee make it well appeare, that hee was come to aide him, being requested as a friend and allie, the which had happie successe. That his vpright meaning therein was the greatest cause that God had beheld from aboue his power, by the which he bruised the head of the most fierce enemie vnto mankind that was vnder heauen: & for to get him now an immortall glorie and eternall name, he would make free so great and flourishing a citie, gouerned by so noble and ancient a house; that with his courage he had alwaies faith ioined, the which woldneuer make fo great a breach in his reputatio, that it shold be reported of him, he came The world to help as a friend under the pretence to inuade the do-mind of Taminions of his Alliesthat he would have the feruice he merlan. had done of the Greek Emperors engrauen in the memorie of the posterity, to the end they might wish well vnto him and his fucceffors, by remembring that he had done good vnto them; that he contented himfelfe to carrie away the honor and glorie thereof; that long might he liue to gouerne his estate; and that before his departure he should consider so well to establish him, as that hee should not fall againe into so great ieopardie, that hee delivered into his handes the two fonnes of Baiazet, to do with them as he should thinke good; that he should be wise and prouident in well aduiting himselfe hereafter; that his good will should be alwayes most fauourable towards him. You may eafily judge what joy these Greekish Princes received, hearing the Emperor pronounce these words, full offo great clemencie, who for that he would not be seene to breake his faith, refused an Empire offered vnto him, and the most stately and magnificent Citie of the world. I do thinke there bee few Princes

Bonfires made in Confrantinople for the worthy answer received from Tamerlan.

132

dement from the Prince to feast these Embassadors. and to do them all the honor that might be: one of the was fent vnto the Emperour to carrie him these newes, who looked for some cleane contrarie : but having receined word thereof, then was the time to make bonfires within Constantinople, and the oportunitie to reioyce with all kind of pleasures. The Greekish Emperour hauing affembled his Counfell, to know whether hee should not go vnto him and give him thankes, it was fo refolued on by all the Princes of the Court. So the Emperour was advertised of his journey, who was verie glad thereof, and even vpon the first dayes iourney Axalla was fent by the Emperour for to certifie him of the joy that he conceived to have the good hap for to fee him, as also for to conduct him even vnto Bursia, whither the Emperor understanding the Greek came, went to meet him, and with all kinds of magnificences, they were one whole day together. The next day the Greekish Emperour tooke his leave of the Prince, who did accompanie him out of the Citie. Nowe the Emperour had as great a desire as might be, to fee this fo famous a Citie, as was constantinople, but he would not goe thither but as a priuate person; the which Axalla handled without making anie thew thereof, defiring to be received thereinto prinately by the Greekish Emperour. The which ferret going to was accomplished with all the familiarity possible, and therein was no rare and excellent thing which was not

Thewed vito the Emperour. The Greekish Prince hauing aduised himselfe of all the meanes to doe him pleasure, & vnto all them which did accompanie him,

who

but few Tamerlans in the world. Axalla had comman-

The meeting of Tamerlan and the Greek Emperor 4t Burfia.

Tamerlan his Constantinople

who were in a manner all apparelled after the Greeke fashion, infomuch as they were greatly astonished to understand that we had bene there. The Greeke Emperour was curious to shew vnto our Emperour all the faire gardens, the which be all along the fea coast, a league or two from Constantinople, and hee conducted him in private companie, fo as five or fixe dayes were fpent with all the mirth that might be possible. The Prince would often fay, he had neuer seene a fairer citiesthat this was indeede the citie (confidering his faire and rich fituation) which ought to commaund all the world. He wondered at the costly buildings of the Temples, the faire engrauen pillers, the faire Pirimades of things in Conwonderfull height, the which the Emperour Conftan- fantinople. tine had caused to be brought thither out of Egypt, and the making of the faire gardens: and he was wont to fay, that he did nothing repent him of his voiage, for that he had preserved from fire and bloud, so noble a Citie as that was : he greatly commended the mildneffe and courtesse of the Greeke Emperour. Now the Greeke Emperour knowing the Prince very curious for faire horses, he gaue vnto him thirtie of the fairest, strongest, The Greeke and readiest that might be gotten, with the most rich merlan cloth of gold, and excellent filke that could be feene. faire horfer. The Greeke sent likewise to gratifie all the Princes and Lords of the armie with presents, and caused all things to be delivered vnto them, the which he thought to be necessarie for the armie. So as having rested almost fifteene dayes, we beganne to thinke vppon the accomplithing of our purpofes: and after a straightfriendship was fworne betweene the two Princes, our Emperour determined before he returned, to make the Soldan of Egyptknow his power, who had given ayde vnto Ba-

The Empresse delivered of a goodly boy.

134

inzer against him, to the end that all the world should know, that he was milde and courteous vnto his friends, and vnto his enemies terrible and fearefull. So we departed from Burfia, having delivered the same into the handes of the Greeke Emperour, and having driven out all the Ottomans out of all the fortresses, and having left the Greeke Emperour in the same libertie, hee was before our armie came, there being nothing now in Asia that tooke the Ottomans part, vniesse he had gotten vnto the mountaines or passed ouer into Europe, fo fearefull was our armie become by the victorie obtained against Baiazet Andronicus Paleologus,nephew vnto the Greeke Emperour, followed our Emperor with ten thousand horse, the which the Greeke Emperor deliuered vnto him, for the warre which he enterprised against the Soldan of Egypt, with whom he had often fought. Now for to accoplish the Emperors good hap, he received newes fro his court, that the Empresse was deliuered of a goodly boy: for the which were made bonfires, and great reioycing in the Army. He had also newes how all was quiet in his estate, and the old Emperor his vakle in good health, the which was one of the things did most comfort him: for he feared especially least the old Prince should die in his absence, & by this meanes some trouble might arise within his estate, by some great men, and certaine fauourites which were neare voto the old Emperour. Notwithstanding they which had played the fooles in his absence, were so well punished, that (as I thinke) others should take thereby example, & it is a generall rule, that after a Prince hath once his weapons in his hands, there will be no great revolting in his absence, nor novelties within his countrie, how farre socuer he be scuered. For first and formost most all the seditious and ambitious fellowes, do ordinarily follow him vnto the warre, and moreover he that is on horsebacke is feared. On the contrarie part, whenfoeuer a Prince is foftly and effemenate, his fouldiers which are not employed, do go vnto him that hath any discontentment, or rather who is desirous of raigning: fo as the Prince being found vnarmed, before he hath made an Armie, and gathered together his garrisons, the seditious have alreadie plaied well their parts, and the mischiese hath entred very farre. There were fixe moneths passed since we departed fro Samarcand, and it grieved many that the Emperour would not returne into his countrie: infomuch as this being declared vnto the Prince by Axalla, it was thoght convenient the Prince should againe review the order of his armie, and should speake vnto his souldiers, causing a generall review to be made of his armie, and that this same might give them the greater courage for to endure all discommodities for the feruice of the Prince. So being come vnto Calestria, a generall review was commaunded, the Prince being himselse there in person, where hee spake first vnro the Parthians in this manner: I cannot beleeve my Tamerlan bis countriemen and fouldiers, that you have any defire oration puto to see your countrie, and that you are fainting to Calestria perwinne glory vnto your Nation, seeing all people do ha-swafine, to folzard all & euery kind of happinesse for to win vnto them him vnto felues the fame: you with me, and I with you, have within certaine yeares gotten many victories, whereby we haue made our Nation superious vnto others, and our name made famous ouer all the world. If you be wearie in following my glorious enfignes, remember your selues, how it may be reported, that Tamerlan your

bis fouldiers as

Emperour hath finished his victories through the valor of another Nation, & not by his own: & confider what reproch you shall bring vnto ours, renowmed by so great successe obtained against so many and fundrie warlike people. You my fouldiers, whose reputation flieth through all the world, shall I beleeue this of you? I will not, neither ought I to beleeve it: therefore follow me, and let vs go and affault the Mamelues, who you know of long time have opposed themselves (how farre soeuer from vs) against our happinesse, having ioyned themselues vnto the Ottomans for our destruction. Would you that I should punish their rashnesse. without you? Would you that the Scithians and my allies, should have part in my victories, and in the meane time, you should go rest your selues, and lose the glorie alreadie gotten? The Prince had no sooner made an end, but they all cryed with a loud voice, that they wold liue and die with him, and as they followed him into China, so would they also follow him throughout all the world: but they befought him to have regard vnto their woundes, to comfort their old age, and that he would give the hope of rest: the which the Prince promised vnto them. Vnto the others the Emperour spake nothing at all, for they were very glad to haue this glorie ouer the Parthians, in perceiuing them willing to returne, infomuch as when the Prince came to passe before the Scithian horsemen, they all cryed in their language: Victorious Emperour what doest thou? march forward, for we will follow thee. The which did greatly content the Emperour. Now the Parthians and Scithians were the principall forces the Prince had in his armie: now the Emperour did nourish wisely emulation betweene them, which of them should best manifest his

Tamerlan his care of husicke foldiers verie commendable and imitable.

faith-

faithfull affection. The Pince commanded that the fick and wounded should be viewed throughout all the armie, and that the Treasurer of the wars should diffribute money among the companies, ouer and about the ordinarie pay due vnto euery foultier: fo our armie departed, and in the auantguard with Axalla was placed Andronicus together with him, for to leade the head of the armie: and it was reported unto the Emperour, that the Soldan of Egypt prepared forces from all parts for to refift the power which came against him, but hee knew that he should have much to doe, and that it was very hard to stoppe a victorious armie, wherein there were fuch a multitude of men, who had ouerthrowen the strongest and most warlike Monarch that was in all Afia. Infomuch as this game a great terror vnto the Mamelues. But the Soldan, who commanded ouer them at that present was a young Prince, who had bene chosen for the great vertue and courage which was in him, rather then for his great experience in warlike affaires, infomuch as he had not as yet fince his election shewed his affection, and as litle his valour vnto his subjects:he had indeede his courage puffed up, by feeing himfelfe through this choife Lord of many great cities well fortified, so as he resolued to be ouerthrowen brauely. In The Soldan his braue resefuch fort as he put his hope in the winning of a battell, lution. fro the which what chance foeuer did happen, he might retire himself arany time into a place of such aduatage, that he might have the means to hazard again another, and hope thereby for a reuenge. Whereof the Emperor was aduertised, & after he had conferred with Awalla & Androniem, for to be aduled whither he should direct the head of his army, for to constraine the enemie the fooner to come vnto battel; it was in the end concluded

that he should passe by Caramania, directly vnto Genolache, the which was the first citie of the Mamelues Empire, being one of the Soldans frontier townes which did separate him from the Turke, even there where the peace was fworne betwixt them, the which Baiazet had fought, to the end he might have aide fro him to ftregthen himselfe thereby against the army which came vpon him. So this place was well defended by the Soldan. and it was well fortified: Axalla advancing forward his auantgard did fummon the fame to yeeld, or elfe they shold receive the just reward of their rashnesse & folly. They made answere, that they were children of obedience, & had commandement to die therein. And that willingly they would there endure vntill death for their Prince & country. This wilfulnesse put the Prince into great choler (who fince he departed from his kingdom, had not seene any one place which brought not to him their keies twentie leagues off before he came vnto the) to see a meane citie dare to stay his comming, & for to prepare to let his army. The which the Emperour perceiuing, he commanded Axalla to march on, & to lodge neare Aleppo: the which he fummoning, did yeeld it felf. having no other then the inhabitants within the fame. The Prince in the mean time, prepared himself vnto the fiege, whereto having caused his footmen to march, & his artillery to bee planted, there was an affault given, which was brauely defeded by the within, & there were of our men flaine to the nuber of 1200. The Emperour greatly stirred, determined to assault the once againe, & having given a fresh assalt, wherin the Prince of Thanais was wounded, our men lodged upon the wall, and leaving no respite vito them within, they killed a great nuber of the. The Prince vnderstanding that the Soldan

had promised the aide, whereof he was well aduertised, and did certainely know that he marched forward, he supposed that he had committed a fault, in causing Axalla to advance so farre, so as he determined to set forward to ouertake him, hoping by that meanes to furprise the enemie, who came directly towards Axalla for to fight with him. But the enemie did not looke for him fo foone: fo having left all his cariages behind at the siege, where the Prince of Thanais remained with thirtie thousand men only, the rest he caused to march with him without any baggage vnto Bogras; thither did Axalla fend him word that the Solden had passed the riuer at Confinean, and that he came for to aide the befieged: and it was reported that hee bad 74000, horse. and an hundred thousand footmen. Now the Emperor being arrived at Aleppo, understood where the enemie was, & determining with himselfe to surprise him, he caused Axalla to advance forward with his avantgard, himselfe staying halfe a day, and then presently he followed his auantguard. Axalla having fer forward fome fifteene hundred horse, they were encountred and almost all slaine, he not being able to aide them as he defired, by reason of the vnsitnesse of the countrie, and iudging that they were compassed about, he did not affift them. Now the enemies thinking to deale with none but those which were at Aleppo led by Axalla, they came forward vnto the fight ill aduifed: fo as Axalla had them you him before he supposed; he advertised the Emperor to come forward, & fent him word that he wet vnto the battaile, but that he would dally with the enemie as long as hee could, to the end hee might have leafure to draw neare and affift him, and that he would not faile to chuse his place of battel as much as he could

for his aduantage, whilest he looked for him, he set forward presently twenty thousand horse with speed under the leading of Calibes. In the meane time the enemie by reason of the place which was narrow, & a valley wherin his men could not march, but in fingle ranke, he aduanced not fo foone: the which Axalla supposed, for otherwise he would have retired, but in the best manner he might vnto the Emperor. So he determined to chuse a place for the battell, & to make his men for to fight in small troups to entertaine the enemy in coming down the mountaine, perceiuing that his purpose was to take his place for the battell at the foot of the fame moutain, This sport endured 2. or 3. houres, vntill Calibes came with 20000, horse for the affistance of Axalla, who had also full 30000 more; Andronicus betweene 8. and 10. thousand, the most part Albanois, who were good horsmen: he requested the first charge, the which Axalla did grant vnto him, being loath to discontent him; in the which having fought valiantly, & ouerthrowen & flaine many of the enemies, hee was one of the first that was flain, for want of being aided by his men. A Prince furely of fuch a courage, as did much grace him, and who verily in this his youth, did follow the honour & nobilitie of the bloud of them from whom he was descended. Axalla affifted him with all his power, who were in a manner all Parthians or Christians in the Princes pay, who gave a great shocke vpon the Soldans troupes, and paffing through them, he found directly before him all their footmen, he bulied himselfe in fighting with the: in the meane time a troupe of five & twentie thousand tweene the Sol- horse did set vpon Prince Calibes, they say, that therein was the Soldan himselfe, who fought the one against ror Tamerlan, the other very obstinately, and in this meane space Axalla

A battell bedan of Egypt and the Empe-

Axalla fought with these footmen, which hee leaving halfe ouerthrowne founded a retrait, and feeing Prince Calibes hardly befet, he went directly towards him, and perceiuing the place where the enemies had the greatest advantage & his men the worst, he charged this maine power on the flanke; which 15000, horseme seeing, who were behind these footmen, whom the Soldan had commanded that they should not fight but vpon need, they came vpon Axalla on that fide he had given his charge, & setting furiously vpon him, they fought a log time, fo as he was wounded, his horse slaine vnder him, & himselftaken prisoner . Which being reported Axalla tales vnto the Emperor by one that fled; he coming forward priferer. with as much speede as he could, was greatly vexed, hauing his chiefe confidence in this Captaine. This caused the Emperor to make the more hast, who if he had not come in fo good time, that day had made an ende of his good fortune: but having commanded 10000. horse to aduance before him & giue an onset, he affisted the with 25000. of his most faithfull horsemen, having vpon his wings 20000. horse of his aiders. The Soldan did not see this maine power, by reason of the valley they came in ,& he was greatly aftonished for to behold the rest, during the time that Prince Calibes & Axallas men did fight. Behold in an instant 10000 horse which set upon the Mamelus, who were almost maisters of the field. The Prince also advanced forward with all his footmen & borseme. The Soldan not being able to relift fo great a force, he fouded a retrait, finding the falt he had comitted, feeing all the whole army vpon him. Now Axalla, being ouerthrowne by him who held him prisoner, was on foot, & Tamerlan bin he was mouted againe on horseback: his would was but a the Soldan. finall matter: the Emperour followed the victory three

leagues. It is reported, that the Soldan had bene thrife mounted on horseback during the battell, so well did he performe the duty of a good fouldier & captaine, but the fault he had committed was great, for he did not marke that all our army did not follow. We comited another tault also, in so much advancing forward our avantgard, which was like to have cost vs deare: for had it not bene for the art Axalla vsed, the Emperor had neuer come in time to affift him: but we may fay that forsune the miftris of all did bring to passe, that our faults were often turned into stratagems of war, so great hap did accopany our Prince: fo his comming was the victory of his me. Behold how this war was much shortned against the opinion of many: for it was knowne how the Soldan was counselled (& wisely) to draw this war into length, notwithstanding he could not shun his ill hap. Our Armie could not lie in one place for the great multitude, & efpecially the coutry being also in many places vnfruitful. These newes being come to the Prince of Thanais at Gonlach, and he making the fame knowne vnto the enemies. they were greatly aftonished, as soone had he comandement from the Prince to punish the well for their rashnesse, and to put all vnto the sword, without any mercy, to give terror vnto those which would wilfully refift his forces, and also he wold have it to be an example vnto others: which was done, being won by affault, their courage failing them, by reason of the losse their men hadreceined, as also for that the nuber of their souldiers was much diminished by the fight given vnto the night & day. The Prince wold not returne back againe, but abode at Aleppo, where the Prince of Thanais came & ioyned with him, not hindring Axalla fro aduacing forward with the horsemen of the auantgard, to the end that the Soldan

Soldan shold have no respit to take breath, who was retired with 40000. horse. There died in the battel ful 80000. men, & no men of marke but Andronicus & three Parthia Captaines of great estimatio, the Soldans cariages were the next day taken, wherein was great riches. He made dispatches vnto all his allies, & also vnto the Greek Emperor, coforting him for the loffe of Prince Andronicus, as also for to receive order fro him for a new comander ouer the Greekes. He fent also some for to carrie newes of his victory into all his kingdoms. In this meane space the Soldan withdrew himselfe into Egypt, & fortified all his cities, demading aide of me & mony of all his allies. He deuided the rest of his army, where he thought was needtherofshe burnt & spoiled before our army, sparing no hing, to hinder vs from passing any further, a thing which brought vnto vs great discomodity, & wat began to be in our army, it was fo great: in fo much as it behoued the Prince to make a reuiew of all his army, to fee what vnprofitable mébers were therin, & to fed the from the same. He was aduised to deuide his army into three parts, the first vnder the Prince, the other vnder Axalla. and the third vnder Calibes, who shold coduct the cariages with one part of the footmen, which should bend directly towards Persia, coasting the river Euphrates, and in that space put al the courty there under the Princes obedience, were he shold find nothing to stop him, our ar- The Emperour my being advanced forward, which ouer-ran the fame. Tamerlan his So the Emperour tooke the coast of the sea, Axalla the army devided coast of Arabia. There was with the Prince 6000. horse rall parts marand 100000. footme, with Axalla 40000 horse & 50000 ched funding footmen. Calibes had thirtie thousand horse, and fiftie wayer. thousad footme, insemuch as all the earth was couered with men: so as by means that good gouernmet was ob-

into three feue-

Certaine Cities

Submit themSelves vnto the

Emperour Tamerlin

forfooke him: they fay he retired into Arabia, where our great army could not lie. He often shewed himself with some 4000. horse for to hinder Axalla, who having the finallest troupe did follow him more neare then we. All the cities vpo the sea coast submitted themselves vnder the Emperors obedience, as Magata, Aman, Tortofa, Gibelleto, Barut, Nephthalim. Damascus haning received a garrison, refused to ope the gates, & the Lord layd siege thereto. This was a strong city, wherinto the Soldan had put the Prince Zamadzen, who indevored to defend himselfe, but we having planted all forts of engines, we ouerthrew much of the wal. The Prince of Thanais gaue th'affalt, & wan the city, there remaining only a castel of wonderful stregth & inuincible, but there being a great multitude of me retired into the same, they died for huger. In the endbeing willing to yeeld, the Prince would not receive the vnto mercy, for to make the feele what it was to hold out against him: so that dying with famine they yeelded vnto his mercy, & were all taken prisoners or flaine, & fo punished for their rashnesse. This caused that 30. leagues off, they brought vnto vs the keyes of their cities: for they which did fo were not any waies molested, but only in paying the charges of the army. This city was no sooner take, but we turned our head directly vnto lerufale, at fuch time as they did drive out the Soldans garrison. The like did almost all Indea also, & came

to submit themselues vnto the Emperor, who vsed them very graciously, restored vnto them their liberty, promised them for to visit the Sepulcher of less Christ, ac-

cording

plenty, & for the horses were many pastures. Now the Soldan had alwayes Axalla following him, but in the end he deuided his army, where the most part of his me

Damasens taken by assault.

cording to the holy customs of our law, & with this honour & reuerence he granted vnto them whatfo euer they demanded. We came vnto Coracin, the which citie had received commandement to stand firme, & wherin the Soldan had left a garrison of 6000 men, who resolved to fight luftily: but at the length, the fame was aftonished, seeing the siege layd before it, & that we were determined to take it, & having approched the wals, they coracingeelbefought mercy, which was granted vnto them. The ded vpon Com-Prince left a garrison therein, for to stop the roades tossion. that certaine Mamelnes made vpon our army, departing from Nasuia, from whence the Prince sent a commandement vnto-Calibes to besiege Cities, and to set himselfe against those forces which joyned theselves together neare vnto him, the which kept the comming of victuals fro the army. In the meane time the Solda hauing fained to draw towards Arabia, he went towards Caire in Egypt, opposing himselfe against vs only by small incurfions, spoyling continually the corne before vs, endeuoring to keepe our Army from victuals; but our light horsemen did presse so neare vpon them, that he could not execute that hee would have done: the people also who willingly fubmitted them felues, did hinder the waste. The Emperour being come vnto Miferill, he did forbid the Army to passe ouer the river of lordan, for to preserve that countrie, from whence came great store of victuals vnto the Armie, and himselfe rode vnto Ierusalem with certaine horsemen for his guard, hee determined like a godly Prince to visit the Sepurcher (the which is had in so great reuerence of al the natios) comming onto and there for to make his offerings; and being ar- Ierusalem, and rived into lerufalem, there hee was received of the bis godh rene inhabitantes: he therein fought out all the antiquities our therein.

The historie

of the ancient Temple, & would be conducted into all the places wherin lefus Christ had preached, euen as the Pilgrims do; & feeing the Sepulcher, he gaue thereunto great plety of riches, & precious gifts; two things made him woder; which was that he demading of certaine religious men where the body of their Lord was, they anfwered, in heaven at the right hand of God; he asked of vs where our Prophet was placed: the Cherit who was neare vnto him answered, it was true, and that he held the chiefest place in heaven, because he was there before him, and that as he was borne of heauen, vnto heauen he was returned, having there first taken the place. Then kneeled he downe, and euer after had his name in great reverence; and when hee was returned vnto Samarcand hee builded a most rich Church vnto his honour, and wold be heard to speake dayly of his miracles. And as he did visit al, he came vnto the place, where lesus Christ having lest his desciples, went vp into heauen: in which place, there is a print of his foote, he greatly wondered thereat, and the story being recited vnto him of the Pilgrime, who had beene rauished in spirit, he accounted him very happie. Axalla came thither also, and all the Christians who did accompanie him, having conducted his army vnto Tema, for to fet it forward into Egypt. There had the Emperour newes that the Soldan gathered forces on all fides, and was entred into Alexandria, which is one of the chiefest Cities of Egypt. All the people were verie glad to fee our Prince honour the holy places, but the lewes did greatly blame him for fo doing, but they were a people whom the Prince misliked, and called them the accursed belibe lewishe of God . Axalla gaue great gifts and honour vnto the holy Sepulcher. Now the Prince did greatly honour

them

Cherit.

accursed of

God.

146

them that were devout, and afterwards returned from thence with commandement that they should advance forward the head of his army directly vnto Damieta. the wich was reported vnto the Emperour, to be in expugnable, as well in respect of the Castell, as for that the Soldan had put many fouldiers into the same. Now this is a Citie vpon the fea coast, and one of the chiefest of Indea, so as the same was in great reputation, for that it had held out many great fieges, in so much as many did disswade the Prince fro going thither, but rather for to cause his army to march higher, and not inclose himselfe within a corner. But the Emperour who thought nothing could hinder his good fortune, would needs go thither, and having commanded Ax alla to fet vpon it, he caused the rest of the army to march thither. Axalla having fummoned them, and declared to the inhabitants, who were most of them Christians, the mildnesse, & curtesie of the Prince, who himself was, & what religion he held, causing many of the Greeke Emperours captaines to speakevnto them, and made them vnderstand the miserie wherein they were obeying barbarous Mores & Mamelus: they determined to venter their lives, for to put all the Mamelues out of the citie, and all those that favored the Soldan. Damieta wow So as they having taken arms in the night, made them-by intelligence in the night. selves maisters of one quarter of the citie, and delivering one gate to Axalla, all the Mamelues were either flaine or taken, and the citie put vnder the obedience of the Prince. These newes being come vnto the Emperour, who was alreadie marching forward, made him hope for a good ende of his affaires: for to leaue such a citie within the armes of the river Nilus, and himfelfe to passe on further, would be the destruction of his

148 army. He trusted also that by this haven victuals should come vnto him from all the parts of Greece, according as the Emperour Emanuell had promised him, and wherein he nothing failed him: vnto the which the Prince having made his entrie, there were left in garrifon two thousand souldiers of the Emperour Emanuell his forces, and there he placed a Gouernour, and caufed them to take an oth of obedience, the Prince defiring to become maister thereof, for to hold the Soldan thereby the more short. The Prince found this citie to be very faire; they of Arifa did the like, and he put garrifons into all the walled townes vpon the fea coast, for to make victuals come (as I have sayd) conueniently vnto vs:for this was the Princes chiefest care, confidering the multitude of his army, the which had felt no want thereof. The Prince having remained a space at Damieta, he caused his auantguard to march towards Alexandria, and having passed over the river, euen in an instant, he went directly vnto Caire, a thing which did greatly aftonish the Soldan, who made prouision for the defence of Alexandria; as soone as he vnderstood these newes, he vsed so great diligence, that he entered thereinto euen as we approached the fame, and he himselse in person determined for to defend it, and for to keepe vs from passing over the river of Nilus for to go vnto Alexandria; they reported that the Soldan entred thereinto with fortie thousand horse, and threescore thousand foot-men. The Emperour could not beleeue it: and then was our army at Buldae feuen Rames of Caire. leagues from Caire, at such time as the Soldan arrived there, who came thither in necessarie time: for the slaues (whereof there be an infinite number) began to settle themselues for to rebell, and had entered into

Praclife with

the

the same without doubt, the which was very euill newes for the advancement of our affaires: for to remaine long time before it was impossible for, vs to do, by reaso The Sige of of the want of victuals : yet the Prince notwithstanding all this did not leave to draw neare vnto it, and encamped with all his army neare vnto the fame, having caufed a great trench to be made for to couer his horsemen, and thereby for to lodge his army the more fafely. So the Prince during that time, caused dinerse onsets to be made, the which he did, both to know the enemies countenance, as also for to cause thereby slaves to issue out, who did bring vs newes in what estate they were against whom we alwayes had the better, and shut the into the city. Now it happened that the Emperor one day thought good to shew his army before the city, for to trie whether the enemiy had a desire to come vnto a day of battell, and to view what forces he had, and indeed to feeke occasion for to fight:he hoped also that if the enemies did put out all their army, some reuolt would happen within the citie, as well by the flaues vnto whom liberty was promised, as of many discontented with the insolencies of the Mamelus whom the Soldan had caused to enter with him. So the Emperour was betimes in battell array, but no body issued out, contrary to our expectation. The Emperour in the meane while viewed the situation of the city, and shewed vnto them his power, having certified the inhabitants that he fought not their destruction, but only of the Mamelus his enemies: fo as the same being declared by certain slaves of the nation, who fained to fly from our army, he bethought the of the meanes how to drive out the Mamelues: the which being made knowne vnto the Emperor by the flaues, he determined to advance forward his foot-men within halfe a league of the city, and there to encampe the fame

150

determining fo thereby the more to fauour the Mores enemies vnto the Mamelues, who promised to take arms in his behalfe. The Emperour having fent for the principall leaders of his army, he propouded vnto them that which he had determined for to do, the which he did as well for to have their aduife, as also if the same were concluded vpon, for to make them know his pleasure, and the order wherein they should march: and he declared vnto his Captains how he was come on a sudden before this city, not imagining the Mamulus shold enter into the same, knowing there being none but the inhabitants he might eafily have take it, & out of the same draw comodities for the maintenace of his army but the fudden arrival of fuch an army did put great difficulties before his eyes. The first was that he could not long remaine before the City, for the want of victuals, and the season by reason of the excessive heat was very hurtfull vnto his men, for that they had not bene thereunto accustomed; that he doubted least he going about to famish others, mortality should inyneit selfe vnto the famine, & so come into his army; that he had bounded his enterprises upon that part betweene the Cities of Caire and Alexandria, and this being taken he would returne victorious into his countrie, and loaden with the spoyles of all Asia; that it were dishonourable for him to recoile before the enemies Armie with that victorie which he had obtained, a victorious Armie before a conquered and flying Armie, the which had showe his foul- done nothing elfe but feeke the deferts and ftrong places fince the time of the overthrow that the fame had received, not daring for to shew it selfe before ours, very neare these three monethes; that at this prefent it was within a great Citie, acknowledging that

therein

Perswasine reasons of Tamerlan for to diers not to geturne before they had won the City of Caire from the Soldan.

therin they had a great aduantage. But on the other fide in number of fouldiers he was much their superior, so as the forces being greater which he had, did countervaile the enemies wals; and that he did not doubt but our victorious arms already ouer the, wold be a terror to make them fly before vs, as soone as we came to hand-blowes with the that it was a thing whereon the enemy did not depend, in thinking himself inuincible by meanes of the treches they had made within their streets, who do you thinke will arme themselves when as they shall see vs to fet vpon them vnlooked for . I hold opinion we shall haue a happie ende: for it is a more honourable thing then shamefully to retire and shew our backes vnto the enemie, who have so often seene our faces vnto their hurt. A thing which the great God hath granted vs, hauing bene these twentie years passed in cotinual warres against so many warlike nations, notwithstanding by you euen the Parthian name hath bene victorious. To be short, in doing of this we must by that meanes bury our reputation and all our victories, if we should retire this day shamefully from before this Citie, the which will come out after vs, hindring vs from victuals on euerie side, and spreade a rumour of our disgrace, so as they which do now incline vnto vs, will make head against vs, and they which do obey wil rebell against vs: & if we having lost this occasion, wold bend our selves against them, they will presently run into their dennes, fo as on cuerie part we shall have great difficulties. Adnise your selues herein, for there are but two waies; either to raise the siege and retire before their armie, or else to assault them. The Prince by his speech made all the Captaines aftonished, not knowing well which of the matches for to take, confidering the waightinesse of the matter. This was also a fight which they had not

152

tried for to force an army within their wals notwithstanding they must preferre their reputation before death, and run into all hazardes. At the last the Prince

Consultation,

Axalla bis worthy fpeeche thereupon,

feeing that none did speake, he commanded Axalla for to begin and to declare his aduife, who did rife vp, and after he had taken leave of the Emperour to shew his opinion, he fayd aloude. My Lord, what is this thou rnto Tamerla dost of vs demand, hast not thou alwayes tried the courages of thy Captaines and fouldiers, prefering the honour of thy reputation, before their owne lives? What is it then thou requirest at our handes? leade vs against the Mamelues, & thou shalt see whether the love and true affection to thy service, and defire of the immortality of thy name be any thing diminished? Dost thou thinke (according to thy speech vnto vs) that the wals do hinder our valour, & the force of our horses? The first horse of ours that shall put his head within Caire will give entrance for all the Army. Axalla had no foonermade an end of speaking, but all the Captaines cried that they might be led vnto the fight, & that they were ready to die for the greatnesse and glory of their Prince. The Emperor hauing thanked the, began to declare the maner of the order he would his army should march in: he deuided his footmen into three parts, the Lieutenant generall of the footmen marched with 30000.mé. The Prince of Thanais had the head affifting him with 50000 footmen about his person, and all his horsemen after him, this day all the horsemen being referued to atted vpon his person, having given vnto Axalla in whom he had his chiefest trust, the charge of the whole army, who was on foot. Now the Princes determination was to take one of the Cities of Caire, & there to encampe himselfe, & so to advance forward by litle and litle

litle fighting with the enemy . Now within the city the which was ouer against vs, was the Soldan encamped & all his forces:he had 60000. footmen & 50000 . horfe, wherof there were 30000 Mamelues, braue men, & exercifed in warlike affaires, & of whose arms we made triall in the last war; as for the footme, they were gathered together out of Arabia, Persia, & Libia, with many slaves The siegnof vnto whom he had given freedom, his experienced fol- (aire in Egypt diers being ouerthrown in the last battell. The Emperor who had not declared any thing of the hope he had in the flaves & Mores, did now vtter the fame vnto Axalla. So after this conclusion was taken, the Emperor determined to give an affault, & having brought his footmen vnto the place where he would have them give the onfet, even vpon the face of their enemies, as soone as he did see that they had set lustily upon their trenches, hee commanded the Prince of Thanais to affault them with 50000 men: this was a furious fight. In the meane time Axalla went along by certaine palme trees, for that he iudged the enemy had forfaken that place, to go & affift their owne men, as soone as they perceived the Prince of Thanais to enter, wherein he was not deceived: for having found but small resistance, he passed over the treches, and having received comandement fro the Prince that they should presently make rome for the horsemen to passe, whither (during the time he employed himself therein) the enemy fent 20000 men for to stop him; the did Axalla advance forward, leaving 3000. of his men to make an end of filling vp the ditches, & himfelf went to the fight; he found the Mamelues who fought on horseback, & had almost beaten backe the Prince of Thanais. As foone as the way was made plaine, the 10000 horse fer forward, who charged the Mamelues behind, where. the solda himself was. Now the Emperor caused 10000

more to aduance forward, after them he followed with all his power: then did the enemies retire vnto a fecond trench the which they had made in another City. The fight had continued ful the space of seaven houres, and it could not be judged to which fide the victory enclined for they did couragiously defend their aduantages. But the Prince having in the end caused a retraite to be founded, contented himselfe in having driven the enemies out of their trenches and won their lodging from them, hoping the next day to win all the rest: we posfessed a third part of the Citie, all the footmen lodging vpon the enemies trench, and there were continuall affaults giuen, so desirous were our men to ouercome. There were flaine this day of the enemies, fixteene thousand men at the least, and of ours, betweene seuen and eight thousand. Draguen Lieutenant generall of the footmen was flaine with manie of his fouldiers, for he sustained all the brunt of the fight, the stratageme of warre vsed by Axalla, and his judgement was for vs a great aduantage. The Prince about night haning advertisment that the Soldan would retire, & passe ouer the river, he foorthwith commanded ten thousand horse to lodge themselves that night for garding of the river bankes. But the Soldan thinking those to be all, the horsemen durst not passe ouer, having bene informed that the whole army was there. The break of day being come, the Prince caused them to begin to fill vp the encmys trēches, & to fet his army in batel aray. The Prince of Thanais did once againe begin it, & Axalla vpon an other side; but after they had fought, the Soldan determined for to make a retraite & so to go out of the city. For these footme did so obstinatly presse on vnto the battell, and after he had performed his indeuor feeing our men already

already maisters of the trenches, doubting lest he shold haue our horsemen vpo him likewise, he determined to go out and encamp himselfe all along the river, and to accomplish the purpose he had failed in the night. They determined to retire vnto Alexandria if he could paffe ouer the water, and hauing withdrawne his men from the fight, as well as he could, he encamped him between the water and the City, for to passe ouer the same. As the Prince had passed ouer the treches, the fouldiers killed and facked all the whole city as conquerers. The Great Caire Prince having present knowledge of the Soldans flight, won by Tafetled himselfe to follow him with his horsemen, who merlan onely were in order, and having knit together as he might, some of his footmen busied in the spoyle of the city, and being informed that the enemy passed the water with great diligence, he fet forward directly towards him, for to stop him vpona narrow cawfey, where were certaine marishes made for to stay the ouer flowing of Nilus: but the Soldan had opposed 12, of 15, thousad men whom he called his flaues, to fauour his paffage, who were his best souldiers, & stood firmely, the place being greatly for their aduantage. Now our footmen with whom it be hoosed vs to fight, were busied in pillage, and did come forward foftly and vnwillingly, leauing the city the which others did spoile: so as the Prince was driven to promife to regard especially and to acknowledge their good seruice. Now as soone as they were come, they forced the enemies, but not without great The courage of loffe, they feeing that they could not refift fo gret a mul- the Soldans titude and fuch a force, they cast themselves to swim-ming over the ming, and made an honourable retraite: for every man river of Nelus, had his weapons in one of his hands, and with the "ith one hand, other hand swimming, did arrive vpon the other banke, in the other,

& their weaps

The Soldan bis Speech voto those about him after his oner throw at

Gaire.

one part of the horsemen were cut in peeces, and the other drowned. This was the ende of the Soldan, who staying a long time (as it is reported) did busic himselfe in beholding from farre, how they did spoile this great city. Now when the night came vpon vs, hee thought our men should be sufficiently troubled in enjoying of the victorie, without following of him. It is reported, he fayd vinto his fouldiers, in comforting of them, that they were not men which had conquered them, but rather some God, so great wisedome, force, and valour, did hee obserue in our souldiers. There went away with him some eighteene thousand horse, the rest were fled fundrie wayes, and manie drowned. On the morrow hee withdrew himselfe directly vnto Alexandria, making much of those slaves which remained aliue, who had so well endeuored themselves for the safegard of their Maister, hauing relisted the force of all our Armie for the space of two long houres, yea even after they had made fuch a glorious and memorable a retraite. The Prince caufed diverse of those which had bene taken in the battell to come before him, and gratified them in what hee might, hee gaue them presentes, and desired to be served by them, but they all refused that offer: notwithstanding the Emperor (seeing their fidelity towards their maister) did not forbeare to give them libertie to go and find againe the Soldan : for the Emperour did make himselfe to be noted in his victories for some notable act of clemencie, a thing verie well befeeming great men: for bountie is the part which maketh vs to beloued, and valour and force maketh vs to be feared and admired. The Emperour after he had

beheld this spectable withdrew himselfe, and caused

The faithfulne Te of the Soldans men towards their Maifter.

Tamerlan mercifull.

his paulion to be placed betweene the river of Nile and a wife forethe Citie, for to affure his armie, the which he did fore- fight in Tafee was easie to be ouercome, diring the facking of fo merlan after rich & wealthy a citie. That right he mounted on horfbacke, and accompanied with some of his most faithfull fernancs, did ride thorough all his campe, vifiting his guards himfelfe, making much of his fouldiers, and comending them for their endeuours : on the morrow he made his entry into the city, where there was speech of receiving the Castell, wherein the Soldans had put their riches, for it was their ancient dwelling the which the Prince did in his own person, and lodged himselfe with all his armie round about the fame fortreffe, the which is at one of the ends of the cities having given comandement to cease the pillage, the same having continued the space of 24. houres, and every souldier being also

their enlignes, and lodge in the armies quarter. The Prince commanded the next day, that they should fet at liberticall the inhabitants of the citie, and that head- The bountie of Tamerlan. iudgednone vnto bondage. There was within this city an infinite quantity of riches and treasure found, the which they report the Soldan Princes have of long time kept there, not being fuffered to employ any part there-

enjoyned by the fame proclamation to returne under

on, one of the chiefest occasions, that made the Soldan come thicher with fuch diligence as he did. They report alfo, that in the night time he had conveyed out of the fame place much thereof: and fome fay, that he did not

of, but vpon great necessitie. And this was in my opini-

enter therinto, and that he tooke out nothing for feare of making his fouldiers for to thinke that hee would reerre, a thing which might bewray the retrait he meane

for to make; others hold opinion; that all the treasure

118 was there, and that he did not thinke ever to be forced in fuch a citie, & with fuch forces as he had put into the fame, referring fuch a deed of armes vnto the Dininity. wherin his men had bin ouercome with fuch aduatage. Now the Prince after he had certified Calibes of this viflory, who was all along by the river of Euphrates with his army which daily increased, having taken many cities, it was a great altonishment vnto all Persia, &there rained at that present time over those Nations a multitude of finall kings, some of them observing the law of the Prophet, the other being Christians. The Prince had a purpose in his returne to subject all that wider his obedience; he fent Calibes word of his victoria, and that he gaue him the gouernmet of all Egypt. So the Prince having taken order for all that was necessarie for the keeping offuch a citieshe caufed his armie to paffe over the river for to go and follow the Soldan vnto Alexandris to the end he should not leave his victorie unperfect. And having caused his avantguard to passe over and distributed vitto enery one before the passage, a Lamer Lan. reward according to their deferts, Wxalla paffed ouer with the ananguard to go with all speed into Alexandrie for to hinder the Soldan from joyning of his forces together. The Emperour remaining with the maine forces of the armie, did make no longer abode at Caire: for all the people came and yeclded themselves voto him, and after hee had taken the oath of fidelitie of the people and citie, and of all the neare adjoyning ofties, and having established as great securitie as hee could, he determined to stretch even so farre the borders of Scithia: he left tenne thousand souldiers with in that citie, and brought away those he thought might burt him; he chaunged almost all the people therein hauing

hauing a great multitude of men within his armie of whom he planted enery where as he paffed new Colonies for to affure the places, and in a manner euen vnto Cana all yelded to his obedience: & Embaffadors came from all partes, as well from Arabia the happy, as out of all Africa, for to submit theselves under his obedience, formuch was the terror of his name printed in the harts of all those people adjoyning vnto his conquests. And referring the disposing of the affaires of Egypt vntil his returne from Alexandria vnto Caire, his owne person went you the river of Nilss for his pleasure, having caused all his armie to passe ouer under the conduct of the Prince of Thanais: and himselfe with a part of his Tamerlan fouldiers determined to go by water, and caufing an went to the infinite number of boates to be prepared for himselfe, vine of Nilmo and those he caried with him, the Prince tooke great drie. pleasure in beholding this faire river, and his swift course sometimes, and in an instant to become so calme. The newes being come vnto Alexandria of the marching forward of the army, made the people confult and thinke uppon their fafeties infomuch as going vnto the Solden, they befought him to have compassion on their estate, and to withdraw himselfe into Libia, and for themselves they were determined for to doe as the time ferued , and not to relift anie more fo great a force; against the which they had so often in vaine opposed themselves that now they knewe not what to doe, they must give place vnto fortune, and that Tamerlan his Armie could not passe strong into Libia: and if weake, he might defende himselfe from the fame, that they would observe the faith promised vnto him at his comming thirter, and upon the first occasion offered, they would make the same appeare

acierallys chance

the from de

denie de la

The Soldans words when he fled from Alexandris.

vnto him, that he would only preserve his person. The Soldan who did fee all things desperate, determined for to retire, hoping that time would bring vnto him fome change, as also that our army would not remaine there. and that in the meane time he should have oportunitie to attempt some thing, he went out of the citie of Alexandria, the teares in his eies, repeating ofte thefe words; That God was prouoked against his people, and that he must of necessitie suffer the fatall overthrow of so flourishing an estate; that himselfe had done as much as in him lay, according to the charge and choise they had made of him; that he hoped to returne with ftrong forces for to deliuer them from that bondage whereinto they must needes submit their heads, and beare the voake. These words were declared vnto Axalla, being the most advanced, who sent them vnto the Prince: he fenthim word also, that vnto Alexandria came much people to obey his comandements, & that for the space of more then fiftie leagues, all came for rofubmit theselves vnto his obedience. So the Prince, having receiued thefe newes, he was verie glad; and feeing his purpofes to to profper, he conceaved hope of a happie roturne. But notwithstanding he was greatly vexed, that he could not get the Soldan into his hands: this caused the Prince for to vie crueltie towardes them which tooke his part, and carried them with him, doubting fome alteration in his ablence. Now as we approched within a dayes journey vnto Alexandria, the Prince fent word vnto Axalla, that hee should bring with him the chiefest that came, promising vato him obedience and fidelitie. The Prince having made his entrie into Alexandria with all his armie, hee oncamped the same neare vnto the Citie, and for the

the fafety of his person caused to enterthereinto 6000. horse, and 20000, footmen, and having given comandemet vnto Axalla, to purfue the Soldan with the auantguard, the Emperors person remained long time in A. lexandria, staying vitill he might heare newes from Callibes, vnto whom he had fent Lochestan his great Chamberlaine, for to succeed in his place, a man of good defert, having alwayes commaunded over tenthousand horse in the army, who carying with him his regiment which was often thousand horse, Calibertooke as many for to come forward towards vs with all his carriage. Behold how there needed no mediation with the Prince? he remembring in the ablence of his fernants, their valor & deferts, and the honor wherof they were worthy; one of the parts that did fo much recomend the Emperour. Infomuch as no man did fue for any thing, neither demanded any honors, or estates neare vnto his person; no not for the gouernmet of his estate. As we departed fro Aleaire the Emperor received newes that the Emperor his vakle was very ficke, the which made him very fad: but he relyed vpon the wisedome of the Empresse his wife, who would fo well gratifie the kings & princes his fubiects, that there should happen no trouble when foeuer this ill hap should fall out. For his affaires being prosperous, & many victories daily obtained, who was he in all the world that durft fo much as lift vp his head against him?much lesse within his own kingdomes. The Empresse also sent him wordsthat the looked for his coming home, vnto the circumcifion of his eldelt fonne, who God had given vitto him, the which was well nourished, so as in Alcaire were the certaine limits of his conquetts, & alfo of the prosperitie of his fathers inhetitance. He had newes also that the Chinois wold haue

L 3

162

Arfanibei his treachery against Tamerlan.

rebelled, and how the Viceroy Odmarhad punished the feuerely, and had won a battell wherein the kings brother was flaine, fo as his borders were on that fide most affired, and increased even vnto Cauchechina, after that they went about for to rebell : not with standing, Odmar had a commadement from the old Emperor to pacific and keepe that which he had conquered beyond the riuer of Flezan. Now Axalla having passed beyond Alexandria, had thereby given fo great a fright voto all Africa (they supposing that the Emperor did follow) that 22 kings of Libia fent their Embassadors vnto him, for to offer their obedience vnto the Emperour. The Soldan having passed further for faken of al his men, who came daily to yeeld themselves vnto Axalla our Lieutenant generall, Arfanibei fent to demaund securitie of the Emperour who feeing all things desperate, beseeched him to accept of his feruice. The Emperour who was milde, received him courteoufly, graunting vnto him as much as he defired, and thereupon did sweare fidelitic voto him: but he had notwith standing another matter in his minde, for he had promised the Soldan to give an attempt upon the Emperors person: and there were full foure thousand Mamelues received into the Princes feruice who should have done this execution within Alexandria, where the Prince did cotinue intending the establishing of his new conquests. Now the enterprise was appointed in the morning when the Prince shold give audience to everie one (according to his cufrom)hauing of his guard only 1 200 fouldiers, appointed every day out of 10000, ordained for the preferuation of the Princes person:he had also imparted this enterprise vnto diverse of the inhabitants, who shold have taken armes as foone as the fame should be executed. Now

M

Now as the enterprise was dangerous, so seemed it eafie as he thereof perfwaded himfelfe, having caused all his men to enter one by one into the armie, whither they had yeelded themselves: and it was three weekes fince he deuised this enterprise. So the day came when he fhould do this execution, the Prince having the day before made him a present of one of the most coragious horses of his stable, and having comanded his men to thew all curtefie and good entertainement vnto him and his company. Now in the morning he drew neare vnto the Emperour, who was in his tent, whither eueric one repaired that had any bufineffe with bim. Now you must vinderstand, that Alexandria is builded in such a fashion, that they go vpon the tops of the houses, the which are in maner of vaultes, where the traitor had fecretly placed those who should affist him after the mischiefwere comitted. He came then & shewedhimselfe a far off; the Prince(full of gentlenesse) asked him what he desired, astonished not with stading that he came into that place which was not fit for his dignity, the Prince only ministring iustice for those which had not accesse vnto his perfo, as were the poore people & foldiers: but he knew not yet that custome: so as the Prince perceiuing him change colour in holding some petition, the Prince had alwaies an eye to that he did; on a fuddaine hee drew neare vnto the Prince, with his sword in his Tamerlan bis hand: the Prince hauing his ready affoone as he, miffed great daunger not him as he had done; the Prince retired back one pale defence of bim for to avoide the thrust he cast at him: the Emperor ha-fele, to the uing striken him, did almost cut off one of his armes, the traitor, the which he put forward for to strike him. In this instant they ran vnto the Princes succour, and one of his feruants comming, did give him another blow vpon

the head; but a small matter wherewith he fell downe. The Prince having stayed them from killing of him to the end he might know his companions , then gried he out, & with great lamentations bewailed his good maifter, fending vnto him this his deed, as the last witnesse of his fidelitie. The Prince demanded of him, wherefore he did not kill him in the battell, but would traiteroufly at this present under the pretence of friendship and fernice take his life from him? The other answered onely; let me die, let me die. The chiefe ludge of the Imperiall Iustice tooke and examined him, together with the Princes most privile Councell. In the meane time they caused every man to take armes, the Princes horsemen mounted on horsebacke, the gards were increased, they made the hauen fure, the Prince withdrew himself into his lodging, being happie that he had faued his life fro this blow. You might have seene both Captains & souldiers run vnto the Emperors lodging & wold have forced the guards for to fee whether the Prince were well, who was desirous to take rest: he was copelled to shew himselfe vnto his Captains & souldiers, for to affure the of his health: yea he was constrained to mount on horsbacke, and to go every where even into the campe. And at fuch time as they did see the Prince, you would have faid, that the heaues did breake with cries, through the ioy they made ouer all for the health of their Prince, fo great Idolaters were the fouldiers of their Emperour. The other was presently put to the torture, who couragiously confessed all the enterprise requiring death. Some wet vnto the place where the named were; there were three hundred yet shur vp, who were all tyed and put in prison, the others sought out here and there. He missed not to accuse those of the citie, vnto whom he

had deliuered letters of credit from the Soldan. The Prince who was an enemie vnto crueltie, perceiuing that the end of this businesse would prooue long, hee went out of Alexandria, for that he knew the discouerie of all the partakers, & to the end execution might be made of those of the enterprise. It was a miserable spectacle to behold all these thinges thus perfourmed within the Citie at luch time as they apprehended the conspirators, who being conuinced, were put to death openly: and the game began at Arzambei, who being Arzambei bestrangled, his head was set up for a memorie of that headed for treason vpon the market place, and his body denided Tamerlan, into foure quarters. And the verie fame punishment with divers of was taken of all the conspired inhabitants of the citie, his copanions at Alexandria or any others. Those which were suspected, and might anie wayes be detected, were led away prisoners, and made flaues, being changed from that place. Beholde the end of this conspiracie, the which the valorand maiestie of the Prince alone did defend, and no other force at all: but as I have often heard the Prince fay, he had an imagination, that this mad fellow wold do him fome mischiefe, and if it had not bene for feare of committing any thing vnworthy his greatnesse and faith giuen, he would have caused him to be apprehended, but he had good regard vnto his practifes. The Prince was often wont to fay, that he did not feare fuch wic- Arefolute fay. ked murtherers, for that he had a good keeper neere ing of Tameria vnto him and this hee meant (as I vnderstood afterwards) by a defending Angell, whom he called Meawiel, vnto whom it was enjoyned (as he faid) by God, for to defend him against all dangers, whose picture he caried as a mark in his enfignes & impreses, causing the croillant mark of the Ottomans to be blotted out of all

treason against

Pareers a

A Prangerof

Asia, and his owne to be planted there. Now Axalla having passed further, and made the Princes armes to be felt ouer all, having also brought all the neather Libia to be subject vnto Alexandria: the Prince finding this countrie to be verie faire and pleasant, he looked daily for the comming of Calibes, and he in the meane time ordered the affaires of his new estate, causing his Armie to refresh it selfe, the which was spread ouer all: he suffered none but Axalla to keepe the order of an armie beforehim. The heate was very great at that present, the which our fouldiers did endure with great discommoditie: the Parthians especially whose temperate climate doth incline more vnto cold then heate. This being ended, the Emperour returned into Alexandria, whither divers Embassadors from the kings of Libia and Barbary came unto him, swearing obedience of fidelitie between his hands. The nearest gaue hostages for the other further off:the Prince contented himkings of Afri- felfe with their faith, and with the outward fignes of their good willes. Behold how every one came to acknowledge this new Lord, & he would have the great enlargemet of the bounds of his Empire appeare vnto the world. Now the Prince had a defire more then he vsed to have, to see the sweetnes of his native country, age bringing vnto him a defire to rest himselfe. And he was wont to fay, that he had heard the Emperor his father declare, that the fauor of fortune was at his period vnto a man of 45 years of age, for any increasing that it behooved after that time to study how to preserve it, & not any more to augment the same : because fortune doth often change her countenance, like vnto that of man, the which doth become wrinckled & old. He had

moreouer, to perform the building of Samarcad, where

Obedience Sworne vnto Tamerlan by almost all the

A Brangeopimion in Tamerlan of For sumes fanor.

he meant to eternize his memorie, the which he greatly desired: so as he was curious to search in all parts artificers & skilfull men for to fend thither, & all the faire people he could find in any place where he was the coqueror. In this very place he faid that he would make his tombe, where he had received breath, weighing it in a just & equall ballance, to deliuer vnto the earth the fame which it had brought forth, without vling any ingratitude vnto the same. And he being one day demanded by a Pagan (vnto who he made this discourse, and who beheld his stately tombe) where hee would build one for his foule? The Prince shewed vnto him heaue, faving, that it should returne to heaven, from whence it did come: for this fame (faid he) is a parcel of the high God, And seeing we are come vnto this matter, I will fpeake a word therof by the way:which was, that being one day repreheded by one of his great Priests, because he did not constraine with the sword, all religions to imbrace his. Ah my friend (faid hee) I will never do it : for I cannot believe but God is delighted with The Author the diversity of religions, hating onely those which are may be praised without any religion; and my felf would willingly haue in a Pagan & rooted out from the face of the earth fuch kind of peo - infidel, not in a ple, but not the other. I beleeue the fashio I vie in pray- Prince. ing vnto God, is the most acceptable vnto him, & therfore I ferue him in this maner. This is the cause wherfore I fuffer within my dominios every one to worship God in any maner what foeuer, fo as his principall end be to honor, and not to despise him. I have said this by the way; seeing I write this history for you, it is verie equenient I declare vnto you what his religió was. This was his maner alfo, that whenfoeuer he did speake of God, it was with fo great reuerece, that he durst not al-

most lift up his eyes aloft, so fearfull was he of the fourraigne maiestie: & of all men I did neuer see any more fearfull of the divinitie. He was also wont to fay, that euerie one should continue in that wherin he was borne and first instructed, if it were of that religion as served one only God. Our Prince had fo good condicions & fo agreeable vnto eueric one, that it shall bee hard for me to vtter and declare them vnto posteritie, neither can I fufficiently commend them, nor livelie represent them in that perfection I defire, as I have vndertaken for to do. Now for to returne againe vnto our historie, the Emperor received newes of Calibes marching forward, and of receiuing his great Chamberlain into his Armie. We looked for his comming with great devotion, being daily desirous to return, after we had run fo many forrtunes of all kinds, and the Prince having fubdued and brought under his obediece fo many fundrie people. Axalla was commanded to march towards vs. and the whole Army was fummoned from all parts for to affemble themselves together. The Prince carried away from Alexandria even to the number of feven or eight thousand men, and put thereinto for to inhabite other people, whom he had brought from fundry places: he left therein fixe thousand horsmen; and tenne thousand footmen: he appointed a sufficient Gouerner vnder Calibes, who arrived there presently. The Emperour after he had declared vnto him his pleasure, and appointed what he should doe, the Armie was commanded to fet forward directlie towardes Caire: the Prince having left within Alexandria Zamolzan, a man of great reputation, to bee Lieutenant generall vnder Calibes. The number of forces left by the Prince vnto the faid Gouerner, was fortie thousand horse, and fifty thou-

thousand footmen, whereof part were dispersed into all the strong places and forts, and principallie all along the so sides the restwere lest in the plaine fieldes towards Alexandria, where Zamolzan commaded them. Staying vntill such time as the Prince were departed from Caire, whether he did go for to conduct Calibes, whom (as I have faid) the Emperour had appointed for to command ouer all Syria and Egipt together with Calibes made the countries newly conquered in Libia and Barbary. Siria with the Then the Emperour after he had taken order for all rest conquered things beloging unto the prefernation of his new con- in Africa. quest, perceiuing that euerie one of those countries did like well of his government, acknowledging his great mildnesse and great lustice observed everie where, it feemed that enerie one did like well of this change, & to be governed by for victorious a Prince, and whose power was forgreat forto defend them. So after bee had received the following oth of the people as well of Alexandria of Caire and other Cities, of all Sprin and the bordering countries: we began to fee forward our Annunguard, and the Battaile with the Prince of Thawall So the Emperour dismilled Geliber after hee had instructed him, after what fashion he would have those kingdoms governed over the which he had given him charge, and himself having friendly committed them voto God nor as a maister, but like a companion, he Teemed to be forrie for to leave them destitute of his prefence. The Prince himselfe with few returned voto Tamerlan bis Ternsalem, where heremained eleven dayes, for to vi- devotion as fite daily the Sepulcher of Jefus Christ the God of the Iemfalen. Christians and was curious to bring away great quanrife of the earth from that place; laying that hee would honor the with the places of denotion within his new

maid to oppin

A CANT DATE

The Historie

Tamerlan, granted great priviledges vn. to I orufalem.

170

Cirie. He was also defirons for roifee the ruines of sa lower his Temple; faying that he welthcalife one to be builded like voto that at Sawaround . In like fore did he wonder at Terufalem the feate of Davids kingdome, and of that great Salomon: hee lamented the ruines thereof, for that he did not fee them fullie in their former beautie, fo greatly did the deuotion voto all holineffe conduct him. He onlie despised the lewes, which had committed to cruella murther against him who came to faue them. The Emperour having this affection vnto lerafalem, did declare the fame to be free from all fiblidies, and garrifons of men of warre. He gane great giftes voto the Monafteries, and honoured them as long as he remained in that place. I will returne to declare how the great Chamberlaine, as soone as hee was come into his Armie had belieged a City called Meleg vpon the river of Explirates , flaying for the Emperour, the which being brought voto great necessity. and even after he had greatlie battered the fame, was constrained for to raise the siege from before it, being fuccoured by all the Lords of Quilean, of Galder, and othere affembled, beleeving the Emperois was overthrowne, by one one lie report they had received from certaine falle mellengers; in fo much as that which was peaceable before, presently was in armes, and he had vpon his arme all the forces thereabout. Hee in the meane time remained within bis Campe, having no commadement fro the Prince to glue any battaile, and being retired himself all along the river of Euphrares, the enemies pailing ouerche tiuer, began to preffe his deferrer ca- vpon him for to fight: he which had no fuch committion kept himselfe as well as he could within his wenches having already advercifed the Emperour of all that

The great Chamberlain riage of him. Selfe in Affiria and Perfia.

of technifur tob

Charles Walnes

that had paffed, and not thinking of the enemies rafhneffe, could not imagin they would come & affault him within his trenches; but being growne vainglorious by repulsing of him from before the Citie, they did attribute vnto themselues therefore a great glorie, and vnto ys a great difgrace: fo as they defired when their fouldiers had this aduatage, to win a greater for the, if they could. So they determined to force our Campe, ouer the which commanded a Captaine, who was (as they supposed) more trained up within the Court then in Armies. (And certainely the feare and reputation of Calibes was great, the which made him feared: for when they reckened up the names of our chiefe Captaines, next after Axalla they put the name of Calibes for his valor and experience.) So farre foorth that defoiling this new head, they bufied their heads in thinking the victorie to be on their fides most certaine, for lacke of experience in him which commaunded it, by reason of his youth, So in a morning they came and lodged their Campeneare vnto ours: the great Chamberlaine having comanded his foldiers not to iffue our of the Campes, but for to defend the felues with the aduantagethey had by reason of their trenches, & fet his army in orderedisposing thereof fonthe better defence of the lame & having of that as of other matters, taken the adule of his Captaines, he flaved for the enemies with this resolutionally ring himself by that means they wold not disobey the Princes comandement. The enemies failed not with all forts of cries forceably to come and affault our Campe; they were in number 50000. footme, who in two feueral places gave the affair. Now the campe was made in that assets that a certain place to issue out was left in the same, by the which the horsemen might go ynto the battaile, and fight ynder the 172

fafegard of the trenches, of which cunning the enemies did nothing at all doubt. For they had fent their horfmen vato the other fide of a litle river, by the which they doubted that our men, not having the courage to fuftaine the fight, and feeing themselves affalted, would flie away, to the end they might fee vpon them in their retrait. Now our men were no more but eighteen thousand horse, and fortiethousand footmens there was indeed therein's great multitude of cariages and prisoners, whom the great Chamberlaine had caused to worke so well in the intrenching; that they were stronger then the Citie they had belieged, and from whence they had raised their siege. So the fight endured two or three houres, when as he perceiuing that our men did couragiouslie repulse them, and that an infinite number of the enemies were flaine the Chamberlaine thought it a fit time to affalt them to he iffued out of the Campe by the fame place that I have declared, with tenne thousand of the best horses Chamberlaine. within his Armie, and having first given order to busie them he came and fet voon them on a Juddaine, and fine a great number of them in formuch as our men became wearie with killing, their horimen being aduertifed oft his euill hap befallen vinto their footmen, thought good to repasse againe this truer : the which the great Chamberlaine perceining? founded the re-traite, not willing to hazardany thing to no good pure pole: for their horfmen were in mader full thirtie thoufand. This day did they lole fine and twentle thousand men, that were flaine as well in the field, as in the fight of the trenches. The chiefs of the faction was. flaine, who was called Habezard king of Ameria. The this meane time the Prince who had received newes of his esimpaght go yaro the

The polliticke & valiant ferwice performed by the great

of Tamerlan. Armies difgrace, had difpatched Axalla with speed, for to advance himfelf forward with the Parthian horfme, for the affifface of the great Chamberlain. And Axalla having received newes of the victorie within two or three dayes iourney, he fent word of the fame vnto the Emperour, during which time heeremained at Damasco, staying for the Princes commandement: who after he had received these newes did publish the same ouerall, and especially advertised Calibes thereof, to the end the same should stay their troublesome spirits, who already did beleeve that the Armie of the great Chamberlaine was overthrowne. I will declare by the way, that I marked in the Prince a greater ioy for this victorie, then I did note in him for any other he had where his owne person commanded. And this he did in my opinion, for that he reioyced that he was not deceived in the choise which hee had made of the great Chamberlaine, who was as yet too young for fuch a charge. For he thought this same would yeelde matter vinto some for to blame him, not to haue fufficiently weighed fuch a charge: but feeing the wifdom he had shewed in keeping his advantage, and likewife the obedience and respect he had vnto the Princes commandement, this fame did greatly content him. Some also report, that the Prince would not bufie himselfe any longer, desiring to returne vnto his ancestors kingdomes, for to affure them, fearing least the long time of his absence should cause some sedicions, by realon of some diffrace his Armie might receine at the length: and therfore he would return and passe over the Mountaines of Imam before the rigor of winter came, the which drew neare. Prince Axalla was commanded to abide and attend the Emperours

M

STEELS SALES

comming who marched forward, putting garrifons in the strong forts of Indea and Siria, and dispeopling all those places he thought were likely to reuolt in his ab. fence. The which was not done without dismanteling of all those townes he meant not for to keepe; commanding the like to bee done throughout all Egipt. I haue forgotten to declare howe the Prince dismissed the aide fent vnto him from the Emperour of Greece, hauing first given great presents vnto the Captaines and also vnto the Lieutenant of the late Prince Canta Cufni, fo that the meanest fouldier rested well contented, affuring you that our Prince was much renowmed, for knowing how to bound his ambition, who knew howe to stretch the same over all the world: for having with good fuccesse ioyned thereunto the Empire of the Soldan, it had bene easie for him to have made Constantinople the principall seare of his conquests, and by these meanes to joyne all his countries together, whereof the Sea might have bene his limits: the which being declared vnto him by one of his coun-Amitable con- fellers that kept the feale, whom they call Chanceller. & whom the Prince did credit in many of his affaires. that fuch large bounds it was easie for him to have at great Chaceller his returne, faying vnto him; that it behoued great men to vie their faith and friendship vnto their most advantage; and that hee was a publike person, under whose gouernment so many people and seuerall nations did wholly repose themselves; and that he should not neglect fo great a benefite, which would bring fo much glorie and greatnesse vnto the Parthian nation. He answered that he liked better to leaue their limits founded ypon his vertue, then increased to his dishonour by infidelitie. When soeuer the Greeke Emperor

ference hetwhen Tamerlan and his'

shall give me any other occasion, then as a friend and good neighbour, then shall he feele my power, & God will affift my good cause. I thinke (my friend) that Ineuer did any thing more of the honour and glorie of my Empire, and vnto the Parthian nation, then for to leaue a memoriall vnto posteritie, thata Parthian Emperour did come so longa iourney, for to minister iu-Rice vpon such a tyrant dogge as Baiazet: and for to fet at libertie this worthie nobilitie, whom he would bring into bondage. And having power to performe it , I have not done the same, but have in such fort bounded my ambition, as to abstaine from commanding ouer the fairest and richest Empire, and for to gouerne the most beautiful Citie in the world. I will reason with you (my friend) and fay, that I have not obtained anie fuch victorie as that is, although I be the Conqueror of so manie severall people and nations so farre off, and that my Armes, euen vnto this present, through the almightie fauour of the great God my God, haue alwayes bene victorious. It is an ordinarie matter to winne battailes, to conquer kingdomes, and for toprescribe lawes vnto Empires, manie haue done the same : but there be fewe to be found amongst the great Princes and Potentates, who have ballanced iuflice and equitie with their ambition but putting themselves by right or wrong into the middest of the worlde, have held onely force for inflice, the which some have vsed, not having regard either vnto equitie or faith. I will at the least wife icaue this example vnto posteritie. Do you not see how this faith which I keepe with mine enemies, maketh them become my faithfull friends? What force and vertue (think you) wil it haue with them which be my friends already? And

-0100

M 2

creased? Commendine then I pray you, and leave to blame me. The Chanceller being returned from him. who was veriewife, declared this discourse vnto mee, the which I would not omit to make the good nature of my Prince the better knowne, whose historie I do fet foorth. As also that his conditions should bee the better represented before the eyes of those which have not diligently confidered the fame : or rather for fuch as heare speach of the bleffing that God hath bestowedypon him in so manie happie conquestes, to the end his goodnesse should bee acknowledged, and not attributed vnto fortune or blinde chaunce, the which raiseth vp the vicious as soone as the vertuous. So the Prince came vnto Damasco, where hee found Axalla, who stayed his comming with the Auaunt-guard, who had made an end of vtterly destroying it, for that hee knew the same to be euill affected. His Armie encamped eight dayes therein, Prince Axalla hauing receinedcommandement to fend fixe thousand horse voto the great Chamberlaine, to the end that hee might passe ouerthe river of Euphrates with safetie: and he went to beliege Mebeg againe, the which within three dayes he tooke, and Raftun also, and all the countrie yeelded vnto the Emperours obedience, and especially the Cities situated upon the river of Euphrates. The Prince gaue vno him a commandement, to flay at the passage for to joyne with him, and himselfe in person to come vno him: all the which hee persormed accordingly. The Prince did give him very good entertainment, greatly commending his valour and courage before all the Captaines of the Army, and afterwardes fent him backe vnto his charge, hauing com-

Damasco de-Aroyed by Tamerlan,

Arier-guard, ouer the which Calibes had bene leader: withbis Army although indeed our Armie marched all in a front: for marched into the Prince marched in the middest, Axalla on the Persia. right hand, and the great Chamberlaine vpon the left: the Prince of Thanais was in the Battaile neare vnto the Prince. I do not here set downe by name so manie

Princes and other great Captaines, the which commanded ouer troupes as well of horse as footmen. So the Emperor came vnto Meber, where he passed ouer the river of Euphrates, from the which place he sent o-

ther ten thousand horse vnto Calibes, vnder the coduct of the Prince of Atacen, together with fifteene or fixteene thousand footmen for aide, he being commanded to take his way by Babylon, and to make the fame

fubiect vnro the Prince; and he remained in the fame place to vnderstand what successe mad, he being also commanded to remaine in that same place to

heare newes from Calibes, and to aduertife him what need he had of him, the Emperourhauing bene certified of some stirring of the Soldan. Notwithstanding

Calibes fent word, that they came from all parts to fubmit themselves under the Princes obedience. In the end, after some abode, he caused the front of his army

to march directly into Armenia, being desirous to passe by Diaberosh, and punish these little kings, who had rebelled against his men, being also desirous to bring vn-

der the subjection of the Parthian Empire those countries which lie even at the mouth of Euphrates, which the Prince of Atecen did happily bring to passe: & Em-

baffadors came from all the kings which commanded to take the oth of fidelity for the same: for you must vnCalibes into Egipt.

178

derstand, that fince the Empire of the Christians, which they call Romans, they were fometimes gouerned by the Ottomans, sometimes by the Soldans, sometimes by the Califes, & sometimes by the Lieutenants general of the Romans; so as these people were now atthe strongest, but greatly destroyed by means of these warres. Now the Prince would affure himselfe of the passage over the river of Euphrates, for to succour fro thence the provinces of Egipt, at such time as they should have neede thereof: and being ready to drawe straight into Armenia, he received newes from Calibes, Aid fent voto befeeching his Maiesty to dispatch aide voto him. Prefently was the Prince of Atacen fent backe againe, and commanded to set forward into Egipt, and the Prince in person went vnto Babylon, leaning Axalla with the Auaunt-guard not to leave the journy into Armenia. The Prince being aduised to go thither himselfe in person, to the end for to bring vnto them a great aftonishment and affurance in his bountie, when they would trust to the same. We came in eleven daies vnto Babylon: the Prince having received all those people vnder his obedience, he left the great Chamberlaine at Romedat for to fortifie it, and also for to command all the river of Euphrates, euen to the Armenians. He recomended vnto him the inhabitants of Babylon, who had shewed themselves verie affectioned towardes him, and the which was almost wholly peopled by the Tartarians: for the late Prince of Sachetay his father having made an enterprise thither, did take the same, and for the better keeping thereof, he caused the Parthian Colonies to comethither; who in the end were fo vexed by their neighbors, as well Mamelues as Persias, that they were of necessitie compelled to submit themselves under their their Empire, the affection and remembrance of their ancient originall remaining alwayes with them. The Emperour for this confideration shewed them all mildnesse, and vpon this occasion desired to make himselfe Lord of this countrie, by this right, that the late Prince his father had once conquered it by a Lieutenant generall of his called Sahali, whole remebrance was yet veriefresh, for the seruices he had done vnto the Empire of Sachetay. From this place the Prince returned in great hast, being aduertised by Prince Axalla, how the Persian Guines came to visite him in peaceable maner, for to submit vnder his obedience what- by Persian. foeuer countries he held, the which were not many. The Emperour who did wonder at his holinesse, and honoured him, having vnderstode thus much, made hafte to fet forward for to honour him the more: for he held an opinion alwayes of him as of an holy perfonage, in so much as the Emperour was determined for to see him, for the estimation of his holinesse and religion. Now understanding that he came in this maner towards him, he left his troupes to come foftly vnder the charge of the Prince of Thanais, and himselfe aduanced forward vnto Axalla, who looked for the Perfian Guines: who presently dispatched towards him the Prince of Liseaucen and the great Chanceller for to gratifie him, and to affure him of the great defire the Emperour had of his comming. The Prince wondring greatly at his holie life, determined to yeeld him all the honour hee could possiblie, and to deuise all meanes to pleasure him. So the Emperour set forward to meete with this Guines, who did come in The ftrange verie humble manner, bringing also with him an in- comming of Guines vate finite number of fundrie kinds of beafts, the which he Tamerlan.

kept tame, and by the which he taught men. As foon as he did see the Emperout, he began to make his praiers towards the heavens, for the greatnesse of the health of the Emperour, for the greatnesse of the religion of the Prophet, excommunicating with all his power the Ottomans, as enemies vnto the faithfull beleeuers. The Emperor who came in great pompe, was greatly aftonished to see this man in such furniture as he was , and as he was by nature, a great wonderer at fuch kind of of people, there was he more then euer before: and being willing to gratifie him, he offered him part of the enemies spoyles hee had conquered, giving vnto him fifteene or fixteene thousand prisoners, to the end they might be instructed in his religion, a present the which was verie aeceptable vnto Guines, in as much as this fame did greatly help to augment & also increase him, causing the most part of them to conforme themselues according to his manners and opinion. But as this deuout humour pleased the Emperour, so divers on the other fide did reprooue the strange fashions in this Prince, who through holinesse knew wellhow to bring so many countries under his obedience. Now diuers blamed the Emperor for making fo great account of his holines: but whe I colider the honor & reverece which man oweth vnto religion, I am not of those, which will fay, that a prince ought not to have fo much therof: for certainly it is a thing wherof any do feldome complaine. Now after all this great shewe of religion. he came not vnto the Emperor for nothing, but rather Guines religis for two ends, whereof the one was, the feare he had of abused for the this army, which he defired to be fauorable vnto him:& the other, to receive by meanes thereof, increase of his affaires, under thew of deuotion, knowing the Emperor

The Historie

increase of bis greatneffe.

to be enclined as much as might be to godlineffe, and also that he might be alwaies neare vnto the Emperors person, as protector of all the countries neare vnto him, the which by his meanes and intercession did submit themselues under the Princes greatnesse; and himselse was the first that thereunto did willingly submit all the iurisdiction he had , although the Emperour made no request for the same. But this humility did serue him to good purpose, and to his successors also: for this was his preservation, & the foundation of their greatnesse: fo as the Prince, having fubdued all Persia excepting the citie of Tauris, the which is a very great and rich ci- Tauris, tie, and having made vnto it felfe a peculiar kind of gouernement, did hinder as much as in it lay, the greatnesse of Guines, and a great part of the country also that was obedient vnto him, and in the fame was a Captaine who did commaund them, called Talifmahar, who Talifmahar. was throughly aduertised of the credite Guines had with the Emperor, and who would not faile to folicite him for to enterprise and conquer this citie, and thereof change also the government; and he having an opinion that the Emperour being desirous to returne, would not busie himselfe about him, if he fet but a countenance of well defending of himfelf, and so having taken such order he sent his Embassadors vnto the Emperour for to informe him of the viurpations Guines had made, and his purposes under the pretence of a fained religio. The Emperour would heare nothing of all that he fent him word. But he himselfe would declare his owne reasons, and would demand the auncient right his predeceffors had vnto this countrie: or for want thereof, hee would make appeare how hurtfull the fame would be vnto the. The Emperour omitted not to here them, and noted

verie well the meanes he might have to make himfelfe greater through these divisions: acknowledging and confidering well therof, he found that every where they did abuse the same, and especially that the cloake of religion is bigge and large enough for to couer all the world: but he diffembled it, and fetting forward caried Guines with him, and received a new oath of all the people, and in the strong cities he planted new Colonies: to conclude, the Emperours determination was to bring all Persia vnder his subjection. Nowe Prince Guines having alreadie submitted himselfe vnder his obedience, had given an example voto manie: but the Emperour who confidered that Tauris was a great citie, and the chiefest of that countrie, he sought to have practifes under hand, having fent some of his men vnto this end, promising vnto this Captaine a gouernement within his owne countrie: but hee who was hated of Guines, could not affure himfelfe, fo as he perswaded the people to resolue vpon the extremitie of a siege, the which did greatly displease the Emperour, vnto whom it being declared, that the presence of Guines was very prejudiciall vnto him, for the bringing of this citie under his obedience, hee advertised him thereof, and having presented him with all fortes of giftes and honours, hee returned from thence into his owne countrie, having remained with the Emperour some fifteene dayes: the borders of his dominion stretched from Saucaufan on our side, and on the other side, even vnto the Caspian sea. Now Axalla was armie into the commanded to aduance forward with the auantgard: and as soone as he entred into the territory of Tauris, to put vnto fire and fword all them which should refist him. Behold how the Emperour could ferue himselfe

with

exalla marshed with his countrey of Tauris.

with this occasion, for to put vnder his subjection all Glautere & Taperestan, the which untill this present had maintained themselves against the often roades of the Tartarians. Now as soone as Tali/mahar understood our armie approched vnto his territorie, he entred into opinion to aduance forward with all his horsemen, and fome footmen for to furnish the strog places, the which might busie the Emperors armie. He had with him full thirtie thousand good horse, hee being also a most famous Captaine, being able greatly to distresse our armie, the which was wearie with wants, and through the long time it had marched and encamped, even vnto the beginning of winter. But the inhabitants of Tauris being very light & inconstant, he thought that the euents of warre are doubtfull, and oftentimes vncertaine, and that if there should happen any disgrace vnto his armie. he doubted least some change & alteration should happen within the citie, where hee hoped to find his chies fest safetie. He therefore sent his horsemen under the charge of one of his Lieutenants called Camares, who camares. was of very great experience, he being enjoined to wearie our armie, and if he found oportunitie to fight with it, affuring himfelfe that there would be fufficient to affault the fame : but aboue all, that he shold fight by furprife, and not in open battell, knowing wel, that fo great a multitude of men did take vp a great countrie, and lay strogly being joyned together. The Emperor being adnertifed of this resolution, sent word therof vnto Axalla, to the end he should not be affaulted on a sudden, & had uing fummoned a city the which they called Cafechion, Camares had put men thereinto when he did fee our armie go that way, so as the same made a refusall. Now Axalla having invested it, he began to affault the same,

vp a Caualier, the which did defend our men approching vnto the wall, and from whence likewife they did continually fight with them that were within, who did resolutely defend themselves. Axalla having affaulted them on every fide, in the end they were overcome. their courages failing them, and also because they were almost all wounded, our souldiers entred thereinto, and so they were all cut in peeces. About the time that our men spoiled, and put all vnto fire and sword, the Emperour being as yet three leagues from the fiege, Camares Encounters be- shewed himselfe with his horsemen, and beganne the tweene Axalla fight vpo two thousand horse, the which some had caufed to aduance forward on a fudden, doubting of the mto Talifma- enemie, and they came even where the maine battaile of Axalla was, driving that troupe forward in fight, but wisely and like a Captaine, advancing no more then foure thousand horse to performe this exploit, and him felfe comming after in very good order, & having caufed the retrait for to found, Prince Axalla commaunded fixe thousand Parthian horse for to follow them, and if they could mingle thefelues amongst them, the which being very well and diligently performed by the Captaine which did conduct the, the auant-currers of these fourethousandhorse, having perceived Axallaes maine forces to aduance forward, following the lightnesse of these Parthians, began presently to turne themselues, and retire in very good order, leaving the foure thoufand horse to make head against the sixe thousand Parthians, notwithstanding in retyring themselves in the end, at the passage of a river, Camares did stay, & put all his troupes in battell array, affifting of his men, who

were somewhat preffed by the enemie, although the

fight

and Camares Lieutenant bar.

fight was in a manner equall, and there were some fixe or feuen hundred men flaine of either fide, Camares making a shew of lodging, was carefull for to fend to defendall the paffages. Axalla having advanced forward the footemen with him, forced the paffage, and found the enemie retired ten leagues beyond the fame, who wifely had put into a citie neare adioyning, a sufficient garrifon for to defend it, and hold out for the space of eight dayes: and Camares in the meane time didwearie our armie, and made great spoyle of allkind of victuals, hoping to draw things into length. But the example of those the which had beene handled so roughly, caused them not to bee so obstinate : for it is a Maxime to A Maxime. fhorten the war, that by punithing wel the obstinate by their lives, the neighbours become wife through their example, not to play the fooles in the fame manner: fo did it fall out with Gorgechin, the which in steed of being obstinate, came to parley, and was received by composition, and well vsed. Caralla being advertised that Camares was at Archiech stenne leagues beyond that place, he made choise of tenhe thousand Parthians. and of fixe thousand Scithians, and of tenne thousand choise Stradiots, determining for to surprise the enemie, and caused a rumor to be spread by some sent betweene, that they of Gorgeshin looked for his fuccour, and had not yeelded themselves; & that they did greatly batter the same, the which Axalla hoping to accom- a fratageme. pliffi advanced directly towards them, having comanded the rest of the armie to approch as neare as they could. By this meanes he furpriled them in a morning, being encamped within a great village, & having found a thousand of their horsemen at their ease, he caused. them to be purfued even into the campe, and putting

himselfe into battell array, to the end they should not come foorth without fighting, hee encamped himfelfe vppon the wayes into their campe, hoping verie foone either to familh them, or for to compell them to come vnto a battell. Now there was but one way to iffue out in order: the Prince Axalla having caufed the footemen hee had with him to advance forward, he placed the same vpon the wayes vnto their campe. Now they had left their footemen behinde them, and had none but their horsemen, the which Prince Axalla perceiving, he caused trenches to bee made for to hinder them, and having fent word vnto the Emperour of this deede, hee fet forward with all diligence. Now Camares thought he had all the whole armie vpon him, therefore he beganne to thinke vponhis fafetie, feeing himfelfe compelled for to fight, hauing but one issuing place, the which was vppon the fide of the enemies campe, Nowe hee had caused a counter-trench to be made, the which was along by a litle mountaine, wherewith he hoped to strengthen. himselfe so well, as to set himselfe in battell array, and to force foure thousand horse which were his guard. I have forgotten to declare, that the Emperour affoone as he had received these newes, caused the Prince of Thanais to march on forward, with twentie thousand horse that were alreadie arrived, the which caused our enemies to beleeve that our whole armie was encamped. Now the enemy was determined to make his retrait, & for to cut in peeces this standing watch of foure thousand horse, & this matter fell out about midnight, when as the Moone did Rine bright. Prince Axalla by chance came to visite his watches, and had some 2000. horse which followed him, & he being aduertised that the

the enemie caused fires to be kindled within the counter-trenches, the which we fought to force and win, he doubted of that the enemie did in deed: fo as he fecretly comanded all the army to mount on horsebacke, notwithstanding this could not be fo soone performed, that the enemie had not first attempted forceably to execute his enterprise, and beganne to put two thousand horse before him, for to trie the hazard of fortune, who raine cleane through the guards which were on foot. Now our men had alreadie begunne a counter-trench for to be opposite against that same which they had made. This didhinder them, and our fouldiers hearing the noise, beganne to take armes, and to refist the enemies, who did strongly affault our men, and vpon their first comming being followed by certain footmen, they did winne our counter-trench, and beganne to labour for to levell the fame, for to passe over their horsmen, where happened a very great diforder: for our footmen being aftonithed, their horsemen having passed, the most part of them were cut in peeces, wherein the enemies bufying themselves longer then they should have done, our men were soone vpon them (the which were the fixe thousand horse that were in gardhalfe a league from thence) who arriving found the enemies in this disorder, and charged vppon them: but Camares was alreadie passed ouer the first trench. About the same time Prince Axalla (who was on horsebacke) beeing advertised of this disorder, came vnto the allarum with two or three thousand horse, the which The valiant. were presently in a readinesse, and finding the danger nesse of Asof his men, did hazard himfelfe into the fight: but the enemie made no head at all , but did continually retyre, Axalla alwayes joyning together those of

Commercia

comming vnto a paffage, the which place Axalla had

The battell betweens Axalla

commaunded fixe thousand men for to keepe, the enemie not thinking to find any hinderance there, was beaten backe: he busied himselse in seeking for to force the passage. In the end he went lower for to passe ouer, refolued for to fight if they did vrge him to it. Now Axalla following him very neare, the enemie turned his and Camares, head, and like vnto a furious beaft, hee came vnto the charge very couragiously as one desperare, and returning in good order, he foud Axalla, who was in the forefront of feven thousand horse that followed him: the other had yet also twelve or thirteene thousand horse with him. It behooved Axalla to flew his courage and valour at this present: for seeing himselfe engaged, he did runne thorough the thirteene thousand horse, and having his horse flaine underneath him with the blow of a launce, vpon the fecond charge he was mounted againe and fucconted, at fuch time as behold eight or cenne thousand horse, led by Damascen (whom Axalla had commanded to affift and follow him, who did beare the brunt of all) arriving, they found our men almost all overthrowen notwithstading maintaining the fight resolutely. Then was the enemie forced to forsake the place of fight, our men ouerthrowing them. Camares feeing fuch euill happe light voon him, together with them that were joyned with him, threw himselfe headlong, and was flaine fighting, the fight was performed all by Moone light. The Prince of Thanais remained within the campe for to guard it. In the morning the Emperour in person arrived, who found this faire fight, and as he commended the valour of Axalla and his diligence, so he blamed the Captaines who were in gard, because

Theouerthrow and death of Camares.

because they had ill performed their indeuor in repulfing of the enemies first horsemen: the Emperor caused their inditement to be framed, and two were condemned, who according to the lawes for warre were punithed about ten of the clocke in the morning. They of the City, wherein remained full two thousand horse whom they had gathered together, and about fixe thousand footmen, seeing their men ouerthrowne, and especially beholding the head of Camares, lost their courage, and entred into communication: and the Emperour having given them his word, they came out to treat, there was a composition made with them, vppon condition, that none of them should reteturne into A composition Tauris, but might otherwise go whither they would fo with certaine of the inhabitants they required to be conducted vnto Louan , promifing of Tauris. to subject themselves vnto whatsoever the inhabitants of Tauris would yeeld vnto, who were greatly aftonished at the euill hap which did light vpon Camares, accufing him of the fault he had committed, to fuffer himfelfe to be shutyp in this maner. So as the Emperour at that verie instant caused his Armie to march as foone as it was ioyned together, and hee encamped within eight leagues of Tauris, his maine battell at Sedema, and caused his auantguard (wherein was Axalla) to lodge at Chiara, who having shewed vnto them of Tauris the head of him that was ouer their Armie, they were greatly astonished, and the Princes pleasure being sent vnto them by an Herald, they were in great trouble, as well by meanes of the part Prince Guines had within the City, who vpon this diffrace happening vnto the contrary partie, would make no doubt to be obeied, vpon which occasion they being all of them retired into one of the quarters of Tauris, 21112

Talifinahar chofen Prince of Tauris 190

they determined openly to fauour the Emperour, affuring themselues of peace and mildnesse. Now you must understand that the inhabitants of Tauris had chosen Thali mahar for their Prince, and sworne scalty between his hands after they had perceived the approach of the Emperours Army; fo as he was no longer acknowledged onely as Captaine generall, but for their Prince, and having received a folemne oth of them all they had euery one sworne vnto him to dye, rather then obey the Tartarians, or to acknowledge anie thing that commeth from them:but feeing their affaires for to change, they repented themselves alreadie, so inconstant a thing is the election of a new Prince, who tooke vpon him to fight with the Tartarians in a raunged battel, and to drive the fighting euch into their owne country. But now when they did see so great an Armie draw neare vnto them, being victorious ouer fo manie fundrie nations, and especially the experience of their force and valour by the ouerthrow of Democares, it troubled them much to be shut vp, especially seeing he had made them promise, that the enemie should not approach within foure leagues of their walles. This murmuring was spoken aloude, and the most obstinate, who were their Priestes, and who did abhorre the chaunge of the religion they held, and which would not receive the new reformation of Guines. nor his superstitions, they were the first which began to stirre vp the people, and to exhorte them to thinke vpon their safetie, declaring vnto them how vaine their Princes promise was, and that he deceived them, their destruction being a thing most manifest; that they should remember them selues of Caire, and so many thousands of Cities, the which this

this Tamerlan hath brought under his subjection, and peraduenture hee would not constraine them to obey Guines, but the Emperouronely: and that it was the best way to send vnto him. This opinion remained three Agreet way dayes to bee considered of amongst the people, and time within even the greatest fell into this opinion, although they the eity of did see that they were able to make resistance more then three moneths, but hoping for no other fuccour but the death of Tamerlan who was young, and that euen his Captaines would not leaue his glorie imperfect, before they had atchieued this glorious enterprise, that all this did bring vnto them small hope of fafety. Axalla was aduertifed of al this by the spies which went and came to and fro, being most advanced, and thereof gaue intelligence vnto the Emperour. But in the end, feare together with the defire of change prevai- The fallion of led fo much with them, that they of Guines faction fent Guines within vnto the Emperour for to know his pleasure, and to Taurin sent take assurance for their safetie. But they were not the mot ameria. fixt part : notwithstanding a bodie cannot have so small an euill in anie one of his parts, that it shall not greatly empaire the health of all the rest. This canker although it was litle at the begining, did dayly increase andwent on augmenting. The Prince of Tauris being aduertised of these two factions, the one of Guines sent vnto the Emperour, knew not how to remidie the fame; for the enemie being so neare, and thinges so disposed, he doubted a great revolt, and did wisely beare all with patience vntill some extremitie, when as hee purposed to vse extreame remedies for his benefite. Now within the Citie of Guines faction were some thirtie thousand men, whereof they having assured the Emrour, and having bene comforted to affure themselves

ouer all, the courtesie they had found there with the Emperour, and they published the same aloude amongst the people and that there was no enill meant vnto anie, but to the new chosen Prince; and that the Emperour required nothing of them but their obedience; and that notwithstanding the folly which some feditious had committed in choosing this man for Prince, yet was it not fit to ouerthrow fo flourishing a Citie and so manie honest men, for such a light matter; that the Emperour required but the life of this new elected, and of his confederates, and not of the inhabitants. In the ende matters came vnto this passe, that they of Guines faction had affembled the people, and caused the same Embassadours whom they had sent vnto Tamerlan, to declare aloude vnto the people, being affembled, what they had heard the Emperour fay, the which was; that he directed his armes onely against the elected Prince, and not against the City. Prefently thereupon some cried; let vs arme our selues against such as will gainsay this: & there was neither the maiefly of the fenators, nor the arms of the foldiers, that could flay this sedition. The new Prince withdrew himfelfe into his lodging, where being intrenched and defirous to entermeddle his authoritie, he was defired to retire vnto the Pallace, into some corner about his Castell, with those of his faction: and seeing himselse weake, hee determined to forfake the Citie, and to withdraw himselfe vnto the Mountaines. The Emperor being aduertized of this happy successe by Axalla, who came vnto him, & declared vnto him this purpofe, to the ende he might hane leaue to cut of the way vnto the Prince elected. But the Emperour having meditated long

A mmult within the Chy of Tauris.

long thereupon wold not hazard anie thing rashly but let him go, and rather take that great city through their division then by his armes: he therefore commanded Axalla to suffer him to retire, and to fend none vnto the warre, being vnwilling to enterprise any thing by armes, to the end they shold have a greater confidence in his mercie. The night following the Prince elected departed away, together with those of his faction, who The Prince had bene onely fifteene dayes Prince of the common elected depart wealth, whereof he had bin Captaine the space of eight Tauris. and twenty yeares with all prosperity, having stoutly resisted the supstitions of Guines, and the tyrannie the which he would vnder colour of this new godlinesse bring vpon the Persians: and surely if the ouer sight of Camares had not bene, his affaires had not received fo bad successe, which doth teach vs that the matters of warre are so vncertaine, as it is necessary to have alwayes regard vnto the most sure way, and preserue the principall matter. For if those forces had not departed out of Tauris nor hazarded them, there had bene worke for our Armie the space of fixe moneths. And you know what chaunces and nouelties do commonly happen in the estate of so great a monarkie as is ours, the which having fo great a breadth of country, it is not possible but some new alteration must daylie needs happen within the fame, especially seeing long sieges are oftentimes the destructio of great armies, & principally in fuch an estate as ours was, which having bin out of his own country the space of two years, it drew neare home, fo as it was hard to keepe them from feuering during fo long abode. The Prince elected had many perfections, and was furely worthy to fucceed in this monarchy before Guines: but the destiny had thus limited his glorie

That same having happened, all the Citie being joyned together, sent vnto the Emperour, desiring eight dayes respite for to treate with him, and yeeld them selues vnder his obedience, the which the Emperour graunted them willingly. And this they did, to the end they might haue time to prouide the meanes to keepe them selues from the government of Guines, & his superstition, or rather reformation in the Prophets law: for the faction of Guines which was smal in respect of the other parties could do very litle. So the time being come, they fent to treate with the Emperour : and the first article was, that they did befeech that it would please him to cause them treatie fent by the inhabitants to be gouerned by one of his owne subiects, & that they of Tanau vnto might not be seuered fro his obedience; that they doubted not but that Guines would remember the refistance they had made against him; that they beseeched his imperiall Maiestie, he might haue no commandemet ouer them; a thing verie acceptable vnto the Prince, what good answer soeuer he had given vnto Guines to bring them subject under him. The other was, that they shold be maintained in their priviledges, and acknowledged as subjects vnto the Tartarian Empire, and not any lon-

Articles of

Tamerlan.

chaunged in the time, and vinder the raigne of fo great and coragious an Emperour of the Tartarian nation, as our Prince Tamerlan was to the end the reproch of their nation might be the lesse. That they desired not to be freed fro ordinarie tributes, although it might please the Emperour to confider the great warres they had lately maintained against Guines for preservation of their libertie; and that it would please him to ease them of the fame. The Emperor who was of a curteous nature, made

ger vnto that of the Persians. That they wished this great Monarchie that had fo long time flourished, should be

thew there of in good earnest towards this people, and made grant vnto them that they shold live without any constraint in their religion, aswell after the reformation of Guines, as after the law of Mahomet according vnto the interpretation of Haly, and also the Christians and Iewes thould be likewise free, as they had alwayes vsed and accustomed. All other demands being granted, they Submitted themselves vnder his obedience, and the next day came from thence three hundred principall men of the city, who performed the oth of fealtie, in the name of all the people. The Emperour after this determined of his entry: so Prince Axalla was commanded to enter the first thereinto with fifteene thousand horse, & thirty thousand footmen; they delivered into his hands all the fortresse giving commandement for honour and obe- Tamerlan his dience vnto the Emperour:he seised vpon the gates, and entrance incaused proclamation to be made, that all the Citizens to the city of should bring their weapons into his lodging, the which was done. So the Emperour arrived there in great magnificence, being received with the full rejoycing of all the people, and he was almost worshipped of every one. thinking the felues happie to be faued from fuch a shipwracke. The next day the Emperour had newes of the death of the Emperour his vnkle, by the Empresse who had apprehended some great men that would have rayfed vp some tumult:he made great lamentation for him; yet it was the leffe grieuous vnto him, for that he knew his great ficknesse, which did threaten him with death of long time: & had not the kindnesse of the Empresse his daughter bin, who had such care of him as she ought for to have, old age had made an end of him long before. The Emperour caused these newes to be concealed from the army, bewailing the same prinarly, he dif-

Prince Audia dispatched by Lamerlan into Tartaria after the death of the great Cham.

patched Prince Axalla (in whom amongst all therest of his Captains he reposed greatest trust) for that he had chiefest authoritie with him, to the end he might affist and aide the Empresse wih counsell, with full power of Lieurenat generall vnder the Empresse: he caried thirty thousand horse with him, causing a rumour to be spread, that the Emperour aduaunced forward. Who in the meane time gaue order for the affuring of Persia and restraining Guines, of whom he had discouered manie practifes, that tended vnto the Monarchie of the Persians. Axalla being also contrarie vnto him, and hauing as much as he could fauoured the contrarie faction, he had fet downe as a Maxime vnto the Emperour the affuring of Persia, and that he should seeke the weakening of Guines faction. But he Emperour having fent him farre from him, being naturally religious, fuffered him selfe to be caried away with the fained holinesse of Guines, which did great hurt, but not during the Emperours time: for he durst not during his life, but yet vnto his posteritie: Monarkes deseruing no lesse blame for not prouiding for the quiet of their posteritie, as for feeking an affurance only during their raigne. For the Emperor having suffered Guines to come neare vnto him, he knew so cunningly to behave him selfe, winning the Chancellor and the other Princes of the Emperours counsell, that they brought him neare vnto the Emperour, and being there he knew fo well to carry him felte, that he made the Prince for to tast his manner of feruing God, as most answereable vnto the last will of the Prophet. Notwithstanding the Emperour knowing how much the change of his maner of feruing God, was acceptable vnto the people who he gouerned, although he allowed it, he did not practife the fame : but very fe-

cretly

Tamerlanabused through Guines holines.

Gnines pralife with the Chancellor and other Princes about Tamerlan.

cretly he affembled together the principall men of the law, to make triall for to agree this controversie : but he did see this to be impossible, so stiffely every one held his interpretation to be according to the true meaning of the Prophet, wherein having spent some time in vaine, in the meane time hee received the oth of all the Persians, & gathered together great store of money, wherewith he had payed his armie, and gratified his men of warre, rewarding them after their defertes he established the Prince of Thanais to commaund over them in his absence, with whom he left an hundred thousand feotemen of his armie, to the end for to suffer the same to winter in all the Cities, and through all the countrey, to keepe all in subjection, and refresh it selfe. The rest did the Emperour conduct with him, and all his prifoners of what qualitie focuer, except those whom he gaue vnto Guines, for to instruct them in his reforma- The cunning tion. But the matter fell out much otherwise, for having Guines ander framed them well vnto the warre, as foone as the Prin-the cloake of ces death happened, he vsed their service for to assure his affaires amongst the Persians, vpon the first occasion should be offered, whereby he thought he might attaine vnto his purposes: for the Prince having led him with him, he made him believe that he had no kinde of ambition, but onely religion; in so much as he making profession of his religion neare vnto the Emperours person, many applied the felues vnto the same. Now he perceiued well that the Prince had some icalousie of him; this was the occasion he defired to follow him, affuring him selfe the Tartarians would in short time cause the selves to be hated of the Persians. The Emperour inuited all the greatest Lords of Persia to accompanie him vnto Samarcad, which they did vpo the comandemet of the fayd

Emperour, being defirous to teach them for to ferue him, the Fersian gentlemen being so many litle kings, and also that during the time he was in his Court he made them for to know his courtefie and magnificence, and did win them by good deedes, aduancing them also vnto the honors of his Court, and vnto the charges of his kingdomes, wherein he employed them: fo as ferfia as long as he lived was much affected vnto him: which greatly ferued him for the keeping as well of Siria as of the Soldans Empire, leaving cotinually me there, & drawing out colonies, the better to fettle his affaires in those places. So the Emperour leauing the Prince of Thanais with his Army to attend his pleasure, he marched with the rest of his forces into his owne country, with all the ioyes and triumphes that might be possible, the chiefest prisoners marching before the Emperour, amongst the which was Baiazet Emperour of the Turkes allchained, and was a spectacle vnto all the world of fortunes inconstancy:he continued notwithstanding in the same fiercenesse was wont to be in him . So where soeuer the Emperor passed, the people assembled them selves by thoufands, praising & singing his victories. We arrived at the Tamerlan and last at Samarcand with all our spoyles, in very great magnificence: where after we had bin the space of one moneth or two in feastings and magnificences, the Emperor with his accustomed denotion, having in great so-Tamerlan bis lemnity vowed a Church and Hospitall vnto his God, THE Odd. the most magnificent that might be deuised. Whereuppo to perform the same, he began to search out all forts of handicratfs men for to honour this city, the which he had a defire to make one of the stateliest Cities in the

> world. And in one of the corners thereof he began, and did build there his Temple and Hospitall, ma-

> > king

his army came Pnto Samereand with all their Spoyles.

king an accompt to increase yet this Citie, as large Tamerlan built a comple againe as it was, and to people the fame, with fo ma and hoffitall nie seuerall kindes of people and nations as hee had at Samurand. brought with wim, giuing libe tie vnto them all to frame and build their houses, causing money to be distributed to do the same, and giving all kinds of priviledges and freedomes vnto the prisoners, for to give the a greater desire to build and settle themselves there: and having caused the streets and places to be plotted, and having appointed a place for everie one to build vpon, he tooke no other pleasure, neither had he anie other care, then the preferuing the good will of his most famous fouldiers, whose names he having caused to be written in a generall muster booke, the which hee commaunded to be made, from day to day, they (not thinking thereof) received honours, and good turnes of the Prince, in recompence of their so great fervices. Now he declared the death of the Emperour his vnkle vnto his Counfell, and forgot no ceremony due vnto the honor of the faid Emperour, outwardly thewing the grief he conceived for his death; where after he had rested some eight dayes, he determined to go vnto Quinzai for to fee the Empresse, and having left Baiazet in the custody of the gouernor of Zachetay, the Em- Tamerlan bis peror fet forward with his ordinarie court, which was ordinarie court of fortie thousand horse, and threescore thousand foot- fand horse and men. I had forgotten to declare, that the Emperour fent threefeore backe the Moscinites forces with rich presents, and dif- theusand foorpatched Sinopes nephew of Prince Axalla, for to conduct them out of the country of his obedience, as also to the end for to confirme a new friendship with him: for to leave nothing during his voiage that might be an occafion of nouelty, having for that time made an end of his

enterprises, hee was altogether bent to preserve the

Tamerlanhis

friendthip of his allies, and for the maintenance of his conquestes. This was the cause that before he deparwife forefight, ted from Quinzai, he dispatched towards the Prince of Thanais, one of his most faithfull counsellers called Nobazes, to the end he should have an eye vnto the factions of the Persians, and also for to succor all the places that should have neede, as well on the side of Caire as towards the Mediterran sea, to the ende that nothing should be chaunged during his absence, giving him charge moreouer that the pollicy and discipline should in his Armie be carefully observed, and commanding him to credit Nobazes, verie expert in the art of warre. So the Emperour being come vnto Cambalu, he receiued newes of the battell Odmar had wonne against the king of Chinas Captaine generall, and how he purfued his victorie, having taken three or foure great and rich Cities, the which did yeelde themselues vnto him, and that againe the Chinois did defire peace. The Emperour sent the Articles he required, which were that before all other things the king of China should pay the merian and the arrerages of the tribute the which he had agreed with the Emperor. First he should come in person to do homage vnto his Maiesty, & acknowledge himselfe as vasfall vnto his Empire. That the Army should withwraw it selfe during his voiage, and he thould deliver vp vnto him all his Cities, fauing three fuch as the Emperour should nominate; and that the things should be restored vnto the same estate they were in before the war, when the Emperor made the first peace; that he shold pay the army for fixe moneths, and shold also satisfie all the expences of the war, seeing he had begun it, & was author of the breach of peace. Then the Emperor gratified Od-

Articles of a new agreement betweene Taking of China.

mar

mar, fending vnto him for wife one of his fifters with all magnificence that might be, for to make him the more affectioned vinto him. I will declare how the Emperour was received at Cambalu by his subjects with all the magnificence possible, the Emperour for to gratifie them having restored their priviledges, the which hee had taken from them, for the rebellion they had committed with Calix: so as the Emperour went ouer all gratifying his subjects for this new succession that was lately fallen vnto him, all the companies coming vnto him: for in these countries they have no certaine dwellings, they are alwayes wandring in troupes wherefocuer they go: thither the Empresse (hauing left Prince Axalla to gouerne at Quinzai) came vnto him. The Prince remained there almost two moneths, having in this place given order for all the affaires he had. Cambalu was also neare vnto mount Althay, where they vie the burying to burie the Scithian Emperours, whom we do call the place of the great Cham. The Emperour caused the bodie of the Scithian Emperors called Emperour his vokle to be brought thither, and him the great Cam. felfe wold conduct it with all pompe, honoring not only his body, but also al that he had loued in the world, The magnifi-& although it was not the custome to cause women for eent funerall to affift the funerals, yet would he affoord this honor vn- Cam of Tariato the Empresse, that she shold affist the bringing of the "iabody, going neare vnto the same. This he did, the more to make appeare how much he honored the memory of the late Emperor in his wife, being his daughter, & alfo to the end that if God did take him away his childre being finall, the shold have the greater authority, & be the better acknowledged worthy to gouerne in the minority of his children; and also for that the had bene brought vp alwayes in authority euen frace she was married.

Tamerlan his vertuous and chaft love vnto his good wife,

The Prince desiring thereby the more to acknowledg: the honour the Emperour his vnkle had done him, by adopting him as his fon, and in having left him fo great and large an Empire, as that was, whereof he left vnto him the pollession. Now the Emperour loued her onely, having no other affection in such pleasure, but only the happinesse of a faire of-spring, the which he hoped for. Now the body of the late Emperour being come vnto Cambalu, he determined to conduct it vnto the buriall according vnto the accustomed ceremonie, and to put the body with the kings & Emperors his ancesters. After he had from point to point performed the last will and testament of the late Emperor, hee returned from thence vnto Cambalu, where he spent all winter in tilt & turneying, going a hunting, making his abode there, because he was in a place nearest vnto the kingdome of China, to know how matters passed there, having now brought thither his last affaires, purposing to go thither in person the next winter, if Odmar did not make an end of the wars already begun, and if the king of China did not submit himselfe wholly under his obedience, hauing determined not to depart from Cambalu vntill this country were pacified, the marke hee shot at being only to keepe that which his valour was able to conquer through his goodfortune, being defirous to spend the rest of his life in enjoying the frutes of his trauels, & for to publish his praises vnto his people, and with millions to maintaine them in peace. He had also a purpose to bring vnto an end that which he had determined to do at Samarcand. Now Axalla was at Quinzai, as well vnto the cotentment of al the men of war, as the inhabitants, who defired much to fee their Prince, and having caused Prince Axalla in their behalfe to beseech it, that it would

woldplease the Emperor to cause his son to be brought vp amongst them there, the which he did grant vnto the Prince made in fauour of the fayd Prince Axalla, establishing him for somerner of to command in the absence of the Prince his sonne, Quintai and whom he made gouernour of Quinzai, from Cambalue- country. uen vnto the sea. This country was replenished with fome three hundred cities, and was in largenesse more then foure hundred leagues, besides an finite number of villages. To make short, it was that the Emperour his vnkle gouerned, where this Prince Axalla was his Lieutenant general, under the authority of the yong Prince his Andlagpoin. fon, vnto whom he deliuered him in charge for to be his ted the young gouernour, authorifing him vnto the gouernement ge- nour, and aunerall of all his kingdoms: for the great wifedome that the rifed ouer was in this knight, made him beloued in all the countries doms of Tavnder the Emperours obedience: the services also and merlan, as gogreat victories the which he had caused the Emperour "erner gooto obtaine by his stout courage, and good conduct, who for these occasions put his principall trust in him, and after himselfe he thought him onely worthy to preserue for his children his kingdome and Empresse. Now he received newes that the Prince of Thanais fet forward for to go into Syria, and to joyne with the gouernour, for that the Soldan had thesethree moneths besieged Caire with a great army, notwithstanding the inhabitats had shewed great faithfulnesse: they were indeed all The Prince of new colonies, not trusting vnto the old Citizens: for had Thanais fent not that course bin taken, there should have bin many into Egypt to reuolts seene, the gouerner not having sufficient forces to be able to affift it. The Emperor once againe had give comandement vnto the Prince of Thanais, to march thither in diligence with his army, wherin were the old foldiers ordained by the Emperor, & his copanios in all his

warres; there were of them an hundred thousand of this kinde of warfarre, amongst the which there were thirty thousand Parthian horse remaining continually in the armie. Now they lamented much the absence of Axalla: but next vnto him the Prince of Thanais was most beloued of them; this Prince was the Emperours coufin germaine, who as you have heard, had ferued him very well; he had bene continually in all the enterprises of warre under Axalla, whom the Emperour had commanded for to leade him vnto all the services of warre, to the end he might be made fit forto do him feruice; fo as the Prince of Thanais being in Syria, and Prince Axalla at Quinzai, they were established in the two furthermost partes of his kingdomes, Princes and Captaines who had alwayes affifted and served him faithfully. So the Prince of Thanais being with Calibes, and having gathered together part of the Great Chamberlaines forces vpon the coast of Babilon , he marched directly vnto Aleppo, having their forces ioyned together, being two hundred thousand fighting men. The Soldan perceiuing the Prince of Thanais to draw neare, remembred well, that those were they which had ouercome him. But he encouraged him felf, because this great Tamerlan & his fortune were not there present; that he had to deale with a yong Prince defirous of glory, & who peraduenture to get it would do something vnaduifedly; & to refolue him felfe for to fight, was a thing he had too much proued vnto his hurt, except the hot bloud of this yong Prince did moue him inconsiderately to seeke for to force his trenches and succour the necessitie of those of Caire, whose victuals failed the . So he intreched himself all along the river, by the which onely the inhabitans might be relieued for so great a citie canot be victualltd bye

by cartes, but verie hardly: he made his trenches even at his pleasure, our armie advancing forward slowly. The counsell of ours was to send throughout all Siria in the Prince to gather together store of come, and to cause it to of Thanais or be brought vnto Alexandria by fea, for to victual there-the victualing with Caire, aswell from all the Isles of Greece, as from Egypt from the all the fea coasts. Being obedient vnto his comandemet Grecian Hands they shewed great diligence, so as within short time there was gotten together a great quatity of come. Our army in the meane time marched continually forward. drawing neare vnto Caire, the enemy being retired at the same present, seeing our armie come along by the river side, having made great provisio of boats to passe ouer his armie, & for to keepe vs from the river. In the end, the Prince of Thanais, having approched his army, The Prince of and marked the enemies countenance, who was intren-bring victuals ched within his campe, he entred into Caire, where ha- into Caire. uing with good order distributed that which hee had brought in carts, & vpon Mules & Camels, by the hands of Comissioners who he had appointed, seeing the people had victuals sufficient for 15. daies, having taken the aduise of the Captaines of his counsell, he was counfelled to cut off victuals from the enemies, and to take from them the river, and therby the victuals which did come vnto them from three or foure cities they had taken, the which had put them in hope they should be a-Thenein actible to famish this great citie; he resolved to take those ons in Egypt, from them. In the mean time they prepared in Alexan- and happy fue-dria the victualing against thereof by the river, and whi- fame. lest some rigged certaine armed boates for to fight with those of the Soldan, the Prince of Thanais marched directly aboue Caire, straight vnto Muiare, the which he simmoned to yeeld it selfe vnto the great Emperour of

of Caire and

Afiahis maister, the which they having refused were besieged, and having caused all his engines to beplanted, and great hollow trenches to be made, to the end he might approch neare vnto a tower, the which he determined to winne by undermining, because it did defend all the courtaine, so as our men as well by the height thereof, as for that there was an infinite quantitie of artificiall fire therein, were greatly endamaged. The Prince of Thanais having caused it tobe viewed by him who had the charge of mynes in the Armie, he promised within foure dayes to ouerthrow it, the which hee having performed, our men did winne the courtaine. Now the Prince of Thanau hauing caused an engine to approch, they tryed the wall, and finding it weake, they brought foure more thereunto, the which did beate downe a great part of the wall vnto the ground. This being done, our men were commaunded to give an affault, the which was giuen, and the citie wonne, all beeing cut in peeces which were within the same, the women and litle children onely excepted. The other cities feeing the diligence we had vied, & the finall fuccour they had receiued from the Soldan, yeelded themselves vpon the first fummons, & were received vpon good copolition. The Prince of Thanais having left two or three thousand horse and 4000 footmen within the places he had take. he thought it not convenient to stay any longer, considering the want of victuals, wherof he doubted: & furely the Soldan, who was a great Captaine, had with great wildome prouided for the well fortifying of those cities

which were aboue him: for it had bene our overthrow if they had obeied the comandement he gave them, being certains that within fifteene dayes, victuals would

haue

The fiege of Muisre, with the taking of the fame by

haue failed vs. But it falleth out ofte times, that the Generals are blamed, & that their enterprises have ill fucceffe, not for that they have provided ill for that which shold be done, but rather because there was either feare or disobedience in the which are commaunded, & who were credited in a matter of importance. As soone as the Soldan understood these newes, he began new pra-Ctifes, especially knowing for certaine that our army by sea set forward fro Alexandria. And having caused his storehouses to be reviewed, & calling together the generals for victuals within his army, they did affure him that he might continue thirtie dayes without having any want, and to performe this, he droue out of his army all that were unprofitable, and caused them to passe ouer the water, thrusting them out to trie their for- The womercitune to retire into Libia, or whither they would at the full all of the conquerors mercie. The Prince of Thanais whose re-Soldan. folution had taken good effect, the which feemed impossible vnto the old Captaines, got thereby amongest his fouldiers great reputation, and even verily judging that the enent of the victorie, and of the deliberation of Caire proceeded from that part : but it behooved to end well, and this was the hardest to be performed, and it seemed vnto euery one that this was a prize for a masterto execute, euerie one lamenting the Emperours absence for this purpose, one wishing his boldnesse, another his diligence, and another his reputation, the which onely made his enemies for to flie: others faide of the Prince of Thanais, that at fuch time as he The Speech of did any thing brauely, or rather when soeuer he had any she fouldiers good successe, that he remembred well the Emperours in the Prince fashions, & that he was a good scholler, presently they campo. wished for the liberality of Prince Axalla, & remebred

the daungers whereinto he would put himselfe one of the sirst. This was the speech of the souldiers, when as they remembred those that had so often commaunded them. Now the Prince of Thanais encamped his armie vnder Echied and Sebeit, vpon a river which maketh an arme of Nilus, but to be passed ouer in many places. The Soldan was intrenched as I have declared at Buldao, having made wonderfull trenches on every side, even vnto the river of Nilus. There were in his armie threescore thousand sootmen & fortie thousand horse.

The number of the Soldans armie.

euen vnto the river of Nelus. There were in his armie threescore thousand footmen & fortie thousand horse: but all very good men, and the most part of them were his old fouldiers. Now he had fed them much with the hope of taking Caire, whereupon he grounded the recovering of his kingdome: but the fouldiers perceiung there came no more any thing from aboue downe the river, beganne to despaire: notwithstanding the Soldan affured himselfe, that within fifteene dayes our armie should be driven to retire, and that Caire would be confumed with famine, fo as he kept himselfe close and fecret, bufying himfelfe onely in keeping the riuer with a great number of boates. The Prince on the other fide feeing his enemie intrenched, he exerciled his fouldiers in making a trench before the enemie, being a daungerous thing for to be encamped without a trench neare vnto an armie, although our armie was greater by one thirde part of footemen more then horsemen. Nowe wee made our abode staying for Calibes, who came forwarde with the victuall that was prouided. In the meane time wee forbare not to make dayly skirmilbes, to the end for to discouer where wee might with greatest aduantage fet vppon the enemies, thereby to make them keepe close within their trenches, and also to the end

they should not have the means to hinder our men fro passing, in succouring their armie which was upon the water, at fuch time as our men would passe along with thevictuals. So Calibes coming forwards, forgot not to Calibe comaduertise the Prince of Thanais of the meeting place, to the river of the end he might receive 20000. men fro his army, the Nelso to >= which it was necessarie also to embarke & put vpon the water, the which he was defirous to doe without the enemies knowledge: for he made small reckening of the forces which were come from Alexandria, Calibes was determined to fight vpon the water, with hope to cause his victuals for to passe, or else to die himselse and his companie. The Prince of Thamais earnestly desired to vndertake this charge: but some declared vnto him, that the importance of the fight was vpon the land, as also it belonged vnto Calibes to dispose of all within his government, for to fight at the verie same time (according to the enemies countenance) with the whole armie, the enemies being within their trenches, if in case he did seuer himselfe from his footemen, to affift his armie uppon the water, or elfe if he went about to put fresh souldiers into his boates and Galliottes: for we were within two thousand paces the one from the other, fo as every one was affured that the day would not passe away, but they would set vppon the enemies within their trenches; especially they which knew the heate of this young Prince, the which had come to passe, but that the Emperour had placed two olde Counfellers neare about him, who knewe how to temper this his forwardnesse, who was notwithstanding greatly comended for animating of the fouldiers, accustomed under the good fortune of the Emperor to attempt any thing, although very hard

and daungerous. So the Prince of Thanais having heard news of the army by water, he fent thicker with all speed thirteene or fourteene thousand of the most expert fouldiers within his armie, under the conduct of the Colonell of his footmen (who was his Lieutenant when as the Emperour himselfe commaunded in his armie) called Symopes, brought up a Captaine under Prince Axalla, at such time as he had the generall commandement over the footmen. The Prince at the same very time he supposed the fleete to drawe neare vinto that place the enemie had fortified with oakes, with botes. and galliots, caused all the armie to mount on horsebacke, & appointed fortie thousand souldiers to march directly vnto a place the which he had noted to be most easie & for his best advantage, for that the enemie had as he thoght traveled least in that place, who (doubting the Prince would lodge betweene the citic of Caire and him) had there emploied the most of his time. There was also in this place a litle mountain, the which he defired this day for to win, & which he had referred ypon this occasion to force, the better to entertaine the enemies, & restraine them if they went about to succour their men that were affaulted by water. Now as he had determined, so did he force this place strongly, but the greatest matter was to stay the fury of those which had given the onfet: for they would have gone vnto the fecond trench, the which the Solder did thinke: and the Prince of Thanais making shew to give the onset, busied the Soldan fo in the mean time, that he could not fuccour his men, having enough to do for to defend himfelfe, fo as during the time he was thus hindered, he did behold our Nauie fighting, & all his Gallies to be broken in peeces, and yet could not aide them: for our men hauing

Synopes.

having landed in an Iland fro whence they were greatly annoyed, having affaulted it, they did force it, and whatfoeuer was intrenched within the same, and then this Ilad which was as a Caualier for the defece of their me, who defended the bridges of boats they had made, being take, was a great difaduatage vnto the infomuch The valour of as this fight after it had cotinued for the space of three sympos, by houres, the victory inclined on our fides, by the valor of he obtained a Sympes, who feeing Calibes drowned, & most part of his meable villers men in flight, he renued the fight, and being resolute, of the Soldam caried away the victory, and vtterly ouerthrew the ene- ched within mies bridge, the which they had forfaken by the means an Ilandin of a current of water full of artificiall fire, the which co- Niles. ming to rush against it, did burne the whole bridge, Caliber drowwhich was one of the principal canses of the victory. So A first ageme, the victuals passed, and our victorious army encamped within this Iland, the which our men had wonne, for to give passage vnto the rest of the victuals. The Prince of Thanais caused three engines of artillerie to be imbarked presently for to shoot into the enemies campe vpo the rivers banke, at fuch time as they should shew thefelues for to hinder our victuals. It was a great loffe of Calibes, because he was a person in whom the Emperor put great truft, and hee had done him great fernices. They bufied the felues in feking for his body, the which could not be found, by reason of the great multitude of bodies which were within the river. They hold opinion that there died twentie thousand men this day on both fides, few of Calibes men being faued, who had given the onset vpon the left wing of the enemies. Synopes obtayned great honour, and this day was the occasion of his good fortune. Also he had done a notable peece offeruice worthie to be remembred, there being no possible Armic

meanes to fuccour Caire, but by that fame place: for this great citie was fo weakned, that it required a long time for to repaire it, the which could not be done by land, but only by the river, looking for the renolt the which could not be sooner the three moneths. Now after this victorie Synopes encamped himfelf within this lland to hinder the Soldans men from passing, notwithstanding they passed ouer in the night from the one shoare vnto the other, & they judged that the enemies were forced vnto the fight, or vnto a shamfull flight, the which could not be but by the other fide of the water; for by land he had no retrait at all, but by the fwords point, having no place but beyond the water, the which bred fuspition that he would make his retrait by water. For he might wel thinke that Caire was not for him, & that his enterprise on that side was weake. As for those which fauouredhim within Alexandria, all was changed there, & in a manner every where. Therfore it behoued the Prince of Thanait to have a watchful eie vnto the enemies new practifes, and to provide well for the maintenance of his army, the which could not be done without difficultie, by reason of the scarcenesse of the victuals: for by feeding his armie he famished Caire. For there could not come victuals fufficient, neither by landnor water, for to victuall it being encamped soneare vnto the enemie: our army hauing made prouision for victuals but for 8. dayes, keeping the felues encamped in one place, so as it was resolved by the Counsell to retire themselves assoone as they had delivered Caire, & seene the fame victualled. For they supposed the enemies had made great prouision of victuals to be able to continue In their campe, their armie not being fo great as ours. Infomuch as it was refolued to passe ouer halfe our Armie

sidencers are es

લ્લાનું કેલાઈફ્રામની જ લાનું પા, કરિકો લાક્સ

entraction

Armievnto the other fide, and that Synopes Thould not remodue out of the I land, our purpose being no other then to hinder that the enemies should not keepe the victuals from entring into Caire. This counsell was verie fecret in fo much as the enemies perceiving their victuals for to faile, had the same purpose that we had, the which was to retire themselves on the which they could not do but in the night. Having as yet many boates they rigged them, and the day before made a Thewe to drawe towardes Syria having caused part of their Armie to go out of their Campe, Suppoling that affoone as they should shew themselves to go out, our Armie would be on horsebacke, and by that meanes should deceive our men, hoping that this would make them thinke they had a purpose to retire themselves on this part, the which they did for having in the night made thew of affaulting our Armie, and having kindled fires, hee caused his men to passe oner, and to lodge themselves along the river, what hindrance soeuer Synopes could do vnto them, for that the night was verie darke. The first that passed ouer was the Soldan, having left within his Campe his Lieutenant generall with all his footmen. In the morning we knewe that their Armie passed in part; the Prince of Thanais was of opinio to affalt the enemies within their camp, and was verie stiffe in this resolution, but the old Captaines were not of this opinion, but rather to strengthen Synopes with men and engines, to the intent to endamage them therewith; & that three-score thoufand men were not to be forced within their trenches. So all was deferred: they were yet of opinion, that if noise were heard, and that they passed ouer, to attempt for to force the Campe vpon their retrait. Nowe the

Soldan feeing his paffage had goodfucceffe, he commaded his men to do the like that he had done; but he was not aduertised of the supply Synopes had received: fo as he returning for to look his men, and guiding the formost unto the passage along by the bank side, he was affaulted by Synopes, who began the fight, wherein the

The Soldan wounded in paffing the ri-

Thanau affal. eed the Soldans campe, wherin were twentie owen left, who spon parley yeelded theme-Celwes.

Soldan was wounded notwithstanding he passed ouer the water & came vnto his men, who had already paffed. There were many of his men flaine, & divers of his boats funke, fo as there remained about swentie thoufand within the Campe, out of hope of being able to retire & joyne themselues vnto the other Armie . Our fouldiers having affaulted the Campe, did win the first trenches: but the second being compassed with men, and well fortified, they were not of opinion to affault thousand foot them to the end we should not hazard that which we held affured, in fo much as our men being wifely conducted, remained encamped within the first trenches: and it is verie certaine, that if they had gone on further they had ouercome them, so much did feare & dispaire take fro them their courage:but it was better to fet forward flowly, then to deliuer vnto changeable fortune, that which the eie of reason judged certain, by the rules of war: for that had bene a deed of folly & rashnes. Now the enemy feeing our men foncar the, began to parley, and to cause their interpreters to speake, asking for the Prince of Thanais; amogst the rest there was a Parthian Enfigne, who enquired for the faid Prince, who at that time was visiting the guards of the trenches : he commaded that he should be brought vnto him, & haning talked with the faid Captain, who had bene long a foldier under his enfignes, and remaining ficke, had bene taken, and had given himfelf vnto the Soldans fervice, who

who had made him Enfigne generall, whom we do call Colonel of all the footinem he befeeched the Prince to receive fro the the victory without fredding the bloud of his foldiers or of his own men. The which the Prince did grant vinto them, causing them to sweare to remain for euer flaues vnto the Emperour, and his fubiectes The Prince of for to make warre wherefocuer it should please him: the which they did sweare vnto. The Soldans Lieute- gainft the Solnant being in the night retired with fome of the Cap-dan. taines into a boate. Now the Soldan being hurt, retired himfelfe with his horfmen some twentie leagues; vnto certaine places which he held, where hee died of his hurt. The Prince of Thanais pursuing the faid Soldan, foundhim, being not yet buried within Palema, & was The death of carefull to give an honorable buriall voto the faid Sold she Soldan, dan, and entertained all his fervants curteouflie. There remained a some of his with whom did iowne themfelues the most part of those which would not submit themselves under the Empire of the Parthians, and withdrew thefelues vnto the borders of Libia into certaine places, whither verie hardly (by reason of the deferts of Libia) any could come vnto them, in hope to reuenge their miserable fortune against the Parthian name. Thus ended this warre, the which had put the Emperour into a deliberation to go thither in person. When as he received perfect newes of our victorie the did he commend the valour and courage of the Prince of Thanais, & about all the noble mind of Synopes:but the loffe of Calibes did hinder the ful reloyeing for this happie victorie: for the Emperour didhold the loffe of fuch a person to be great, who was greatly to bee commended for the experiece he had in the art of war. The Prince of Thanais was appointed by the Emperour to Emperond

Thanair notable victorie an

Tionness ap.

ระสอฐ โทสเบอต์

in real farms ref - month

teeps word?

States bei f Pro Turneria.

T court an

Thanais ap. pointed gouer-Egypt after the death of Calibes.

The Prince of command ouer Calibes charge : but the Armie was commanded to returne from thence into Persia, for nor of Sinas fuch affaires as might happen there. Synopes also was appointed Colonel general of the footmen in the Emperours armie. The Prince of Thanais remaining Gouerner ouer Syria and Egypt, with the same estate of the formet Gouernor, the Armie was conducted back againe by the great Chamberlaine, who was come thither upon the end of the affaires with new forces for to aide the Prince of Thanais, if he had any need of the fame: the Emperour hauing this custome, to send out forces vpon forces, vnto such places as he thought had need thereof. This happie successe comming vnto the Prince by the means of his Lieutenants generall, made him for to knowe how necessarie his presence is within his realme, for to give aide in everie place, where there were affaires. Now for to returne vnto the Emperours Court: the king of China came to visite him at his Court, according vnto the couenantes offered vnto him, the which he accepted: hee did sweare once againe obedience vnto the Emperor, who caused him perour Tamer- to fee all his greatest cities, for to make himselfe the more to be feared of this Barbarian, who kept no more to him once a- promise then pleased himselfe. Hee was astonished to behold so many fouldiers, and the countrie so well replenished with people; and about all, that they vied fo litle curiofitie of riches in their apparell and garments, wondring that the Emperour was apparelled in meane cloath of one colour, without any other fashion: but to countetuaile that, he had about him men which feemed to be kings. At the fame time when the king of China was at the court, the Emperour received newes of the victorie against the Soldan, for the which the Emperour

The king of China came rato the Emlans court, & did sweare vngaine obediece.

The meane apparell of Tamerlan,

Emperour reioyced, making feaftes and turnies in his Court in token of mirth, and this reioycing continued for the space of eight dayes. After the Emperor had giuen order for the double paying of his Armie that came into Persia, vnder the conduct of the great Chaberlaine, and Synopes Colonel generall in the imperial Armie, the Emperour went vnto Quinzay for to fee his sonne, and visite the people of this countrie, who defired his prefence, and also for the affaires which hee had not as yet established in these countries, as he had done in all the rest of his kingdomes, Prince Axalla not being willing to take fo much authoritie vpon him, although the Emperor had fent vnto him a speciall commandement of the same : but hee doubting least this people would take some occasion to murmure, and the fault thereof might have bene laide vpon him, being wont alwaies to fay wifely, that these maner of affaires were the prifes of a skilfull Maister, having alwayes referred the vnto the Emperors comming. Then did the Prince with equitie cause all tovse the like lawes, the fame waightes & measures, & he imposed certaine tributes througout all his kingdoms, euerie one according to their abilitie, for to help his affaires, and lay the foundation of his revenues, and store-houses for victuals, the which were dispersed as the want in his Armies required: for the Emperour was wont to fay, that an Armie must be made like vnto the shape of a do apt of man; he called the Captaines the head, the fouldiers the armes, money the feet which made it for to march. and victuals the bellie that nourished the whole. In fo much as he often faid, that an Armie was invincible ing of Tamerwhich had a perfect man: for (faid he) it fighteth when lanit will, and neuer hazardeth any thing to ill purpofe:

for the ouerlights of warre do happen at fuch time as this body is lame of a leg, or maimed in an arme, or that the bellie is famished, or when the head is sicke. At such time as hee sent the Prince of Thanais against the Soldan, he doubted nothing but the head and the bellie; because the Prince of Thanais was a yong Prince: and for victuals, he had but bad provision of them: for he was wont at fuch time as he was to begin any war, for to make a great collection of victuals the yeare before, the which was not done now, attributing this victorie vnto his goodfortune, which would not turne her backe vpon him, and not vnto his wisdome. So the Emperour arriving neare vnto Quinzay, Prince Axalla comming to meete him two dayes iourney off, with all the chiefe Lords of the countrie, together with the principall Citizens, who were preparing for the Emperour the most magnificent receiving that might be, as well by water as by land. As this citie is one of the richeft in the world, so is it one of the greatest, and of the Quinzal with most wonderfull situation, being all wholly divided & fination theref ouerthwarted with chanels, vpon the which are framed wonderfull and stately buildings, accompanied with an infinite number of bridges, vpon the which they paffe ouer channels: this citie aboundeth with all kind of foices & in great quantitie, likewise with al maner of mar. chandizes. The Emperour as foone as he was arrived. received presents of the Citizes, the which were esteegreat magnifi- med to be worth aboue two millions of golde, with a eece into Quin- wonderfull varietie of all rare and fingular things, the which they presented vnto him, for to testifie the love and obedience they did owe vnto him. The Emperour was defirous to fee his fon, whom they brought vp with

the accustomed greatnes of Princes: & having caused

the

The description of the citie of

Tamerian reseined with Zai with rich tare prefents

the child to be brought before him, being of the age The order be of seuen yeares: hee forbad from hence forward they tooke for bis should suffer him to weare any thing upon his head, & sonseduration, himselfe did hang a bowe about his necke, saying aloud, that they which from their birth were called vnto soueraignties, should bee vied both vnto cold and heate, and should be exercised in Armes betimes, and not brought vp delicately and eafily, reprehending them which had the bringing of him vp, demanding of them, if they meant to make a woman of him? And they answering, that he was tender. If he be not borne Tamerlan bis (said he) for to be strong in Armes, he will not be wor- of succession in thy to succeed me: for heemust not bee an effeminate bin Empire. Prince that shall preserve the Parthian Empire. Nowe he had fent the Empresse vnto Samarcand to be delinered, where the was honorablic received, having never bene there since she was married. He received newes that The was there delinered of another goodly fonne, a The Empresse thing which he caused to be published ouer all, & him- delivered of an felf in token of ioy, made feafts 15. dayes, with all kinds samarcand in of magnificent turneys: this he did for to fhew his agili- Parthia. ty vnto this people, to the end, that as he excelled all his court in vertues, that they should also judge him worthy to gouernethe aboue all other men. After he continued there a moneth, and having visited all the seatownes neare vnto Quinzai, hunting all kinds of chases, neglecting nothing notwithstanding which belonged Tamerlanhin to his charge, faying often, that the recreations hee did notable faying take, were helps for to ease him in the pains of his pub- thereof. publike affairs wherento God had called him. Hauing vpon his return called together all the people, he publishedhis lawes, which were all renereced of this people, as though they had proceeded fro the divinitie, fo

The admiral. on and excetding lowe the people of their Emperor.

the people of Quintai towards their Emparor.

for to establish a peace there.

A great ver-

220 much admiration had everie one of the greatnesse of this Prince. The which I will trulie declare vnto you. that fo long as the Emperour was there, this people did almost nothing, being for the most part busied in beholding of him , not finding anie greater contenta-Quinz i did tion then that. Some of his courtiers, and amongst the did bears voto rest Prince Axalla said one day voto him, that this was a Citie fit for his abode. O my friend, it is not fo: if they should see me daylie, they would make no more account of me. It is a maxime, that the Lord of this great The name of Citie must not go thither but once in ten yeares, and when he is there, it behooueth him to temper his adions, as if he were vpon a scaffold readie for to play some Comedie, where grauitie and good grace is necessary for to content the beholders : for the people do eafily receiue an euill impression of their Prince, as they also do a good, if you performe it well vnto them. Now I have forgotten to tell, you howe the Emperour fent fent into china Prince Axalla in his name from Quinzai into China, & his imperiall Maiestie did not depart out of the Prouince before he returned: hee went thither with great diligence for to establish peacethere, and faithfully for

rie acceptable vnto Prince Axalla: for he was greatly honoured in those countries, and he was also verie desirous to shewe by all good offices his affection at his being with Prince Odmar. The Emperour hauing a the in Princes. vertue the which is feldom to be found amongst great

to report vnto the Prince Odmar his cariage of himselfe with the king of China, and for to temper all things there. Also for that the Emperour, who loued his servants, desired to see Odmar. This was a thing ve-

Princes: for hekept his feruants in great loue and vnion together, giving them often warning to love one ano-

ther,

other, to beare good will each vnto other, and faith and obedience vnto him, two flowers which raised him vp vnto his greatnesse. There was also another occasion, which was, that the Chinois would not by anie meanes sweare obedience vnto Odmar, as representing the Emperours person, by reason of certaine complaints he made against them. The Emperour who did temper all things with his mildnesse, did honor Axella with this charge and commandement, for to end all these particular matters. Axalla found Prince Odmar vpon the entrance of the borders, who received him with all the magnificence that might be : and having honored and feasted him the space of three dayes with all the royaltie that might be, after he had imparted vnto him the affaires of the Emperour his Lord and mafter, he fet forward towards him with all diligence, and Prince Axalla went forward towards Paguin, wherehe was received of the Gouernour with all possible honor. And having assembled all the Emperours forces, hee fet forward towards the borders of China, to haue an enteruiew at Pochio, where the meeting place was agreed vpo. He passed by Quantow there did he view this strong citie, which he had won against the hope euen of his maifter, who supposed the same was able to resist him fix moneths, he having taken it in three: fo as every one for his valour came to reuerence him, honoring & magnifying him, desiring his gouernment, because he was milde, curteous, and of easie accesse to them that had businesse with him. To be short, the Emperor who knew with wisdom and readinesse how to order his affaires, could not reforme them but by the changing of Odmar, who in truth was seuere and graue : but Axalla being milde & curteous, didknit again euery one vnto

the Emperours obedience: so Prince Axalla went forward vnto Pochio, whither the king came also to meete with him; & he entred full fiftie leagues into the countrie newlie conquered. It feemed vnto him a thing too much derogating from the greatnesse of the Emperor, the maiestie of whose person hee represented, if hee went any further to fee this barbarous king, being more fit that he should come forward into the countrie conquered latelie from him by Odmar, after hee had obtained the victorie, then to go into his countries al-The meeting of though he had subjected them vnto the Emperour, & Prince Axalla did pay a verie great tribute. So the king of China arri-

with the king of China at Pochio.

ued within a league of Pochio with all his Court : hee fet forward vnto a plaine, where he and Prince Axalla did see each other, who was much better accompanied, from whom the king did as much differ as from the Emperors owne person. They met three sewerall times together: the king defired to be admitted into a Citie, which the Emperor had granted vnto him by the treatie. Prince Odmar declared that it was of great importance, therefore Prince Axalla was by the Emperor appointed for to be judge of this controuerfie. In the end they required another further within the countrie, the which the king accepted : fo he was put into possession of that city, the fituatio wherof was very pleafant, being compassed about with a lake. Axalla having discovered that this barbarous king did earnestly desire it only for his pleasure, and not for any other euillintent, the city which hee deliuered being feated vpon a river further within his countrie, and that other within our countrie compassed about with our fortresses but Odmar did not allow of that, and supposed it to be for an enill purpose, as for to contriue some new practises. Odmar being an old

olde man, who knew the kings vnfaithfulnes, although he had made him know it well enough voto his fmart, hauing(as I haue faid) won twenty or thirtie Cities fro him, and aboue four-score leagues of countrie, at such time as hee obtained the last battaile, during the time that the Emperour was in his last voyage against the Perfians. So the enterniewe continued yet betweene Prince Axalla and the king of China on the plaine, a tent being pitched, whither Prince Axalla did come vnto him, whom he continually honoured as much as the Emperours owne person, where after they had long time treated by interpreters, it was in the end agreed that the king of China should enter againe into Quinanci, not sufferinghim to put anie Garrison into it, nor to fortifie the same: but even as a prisoner & subicct vnto the Emperour, he should enioy it, & it should be his owne, inioying all the reuenue thereof, neither should he carrie any kingly ensignes, without the ex- The resolution presse leaue of the Goue nour for the Emperour : hee of the meeting should notwithstanding have a guard of three hun-between Axalla dred men for his person; and should give knowledge and the king of vnto the faid Gouernour of his journey, before he en. tred into the Emperours countries, the which hee must passe for to go thither. Now the Citie was situated in the middest of a verie great lake, in the which were manie Ilands, wherin there were an infinite number of houses of pleasure, and it had bene alwaies a very delicate place, where the kings of China were wont to recreate thefelues in alkinds of pleasures that were there to be found: in so much as this batbarous king did not respect the conditions propounded vnto him, so as he might make his abode there, as it were in an Hermitage. Hauing lest vnto his brother the gouerne-

ment of his whole kingdome, through the displeasure he had of his bondage whereunto he was brought; a courage certainly magnanimous, and worthie a nation made civill with the best learning, and voworthy the name of a Barbarian wherewith wee called him. So Prince Axalla haning visited all the cities newly conquered, and deliuered vp by the king of China, hauing brought all things into a peaceable estate, he sent vnto the Emperour to befeech that it would please him to grant vnto his returne, and also for to vnderstand, if he allowed of all things which he had done. The Emperor who vsed this custome, often to change the Gouerners of his Provinces, would gladlie have retained Prince Odmar neare vnto his person, and put another into his place, feeing him olde, and also for that he was not liked of the fouldiers and people, by meanes of his age and frowardnesse, the which the Emperour perceiuing, did purpose for to bring him neare vnto his person, and for to send in his place the great Chamberlaine, who was young, and would bee more acceptable the he, and more able to fustaine all thinges, as well in respect of the vntemperatenesse of the aire, as also for the paines of warres; determining that if a verienecessary occasion did not happen, to have him neare his person, for to serue him with counsell, and to ease him in the government of his estate. So Axalla was called backe againe, being commaunded to come vnto the Emperour, who was at Cambala, where hee stayed his returne, and to suffer in staying the great Chamberlaine to come thither. The Prince of Vanguefu, who had of long time verie faithfully ferued the Emperour, and whose faithfulnesse was most especiallie acknowledged in all his warres hee had conducted,

where-

Tamerlan bis custome in placing governers over his proninces,

wherewith both himselfe and a brother of his had serued verie well. Notwithstanding it was not conuenient to leave him for to command absolutely, as wel for that often times honours doe change the affection vpon occasion, as also because the Parthians do verie vnwillinglie obey strangers. The Emperour had also a desire to honout him with another government, where hee should doe him better scruice then there: for the Emperour had this custome, to make a note of those that Tamerlan his were fit to doe him feruice, and hee remembred fuch, warthy cuftom to imploy them in the government of his estate, whether it were in peace or warre, without being importuned with demanding, there being no man in his court so bold as to demaund anie estates or honours of him: for money and goods it was permitted, but not for anie other thing, esteeming that they which doe ambitiouslie seeke for governments and charges, do it not to vie them well, neither for the Princes or peoples profite. Hehad also this Maxime, that hee did change them, and they for all that did not thinke themselves any thing differed, thinking it verily the destruction of an estate, how sourishing soeuer it be, to deliver countries and places vnto Gouerners as heritages: for in the end they vsurpe them as their owne, and the estate how great and mightie souer it be (being knit together) comming to be seuered in peeces, is at the end of his power and authoritie, and becommeth nothing. And alwayes for the most part he did imploy them fro a leffe vnto a greater charge of countrie: fometimes he called them neare vnto his person, to leade his Armies, the which was the greatest honour within the Empire: and they were obeyed throughout all his countries even as the Emperours owne person. I have

seene two of them alone, after that foure, then seuen, as at this present; they are come vnto this number euen as the Empire increased vnto his greatnesse none of the other having inridiction of all the Empire but they, and vpon whom as on feuen pillers, the Princes person doth relie his greatest affaires, of the which they do not speake but in the presence of the Prince, & as he propoundeth the matters, for to have theiraduise therein, whether it be of peace or warre. Now to return vnto the Prince, who was at Cambala, accompanied with Odmar and Axalla, Odmar an olde man perfivading the Emperor vnto peace, and Axella who was warlike, an enemie vnto rest, and desirous of glorie, did prouoke him vnto warre. But the Princes borders were stretched out so farre from the Court, that he could not fet downe any plot for that matter : fo as feeing the countrie of Quinzay a countrie of quiet, he judged this estate to be fit for Odmar, who was already olde, and allyed vnto the Emperour, who would bee fitter then hee to gouerne this countrie, as also this reverent olde agewhich was in him, would bee verie conuenient for to traine vp the youth of the young Prince, who was brought vp in this place, and that there was none fitter then he; but the means how to fet this forward was a thing he durst not vndertake, because he would not be noted to have any other purpose then that which proceeded from the will of his maister. Now it fell out that after a certaine time the Emperour received newes that the ancient discipline of the Armie did degenerate, in fo much that euerie fouldier defired the Emperours presence, rebelling often against their heads which were there, for that they had not the accustomed authoritie for to suppreffe

pressethem. Nowe this Armie was the life of theestate, the terrour of the whole world, and that which maintained in obedience fo many countries conquered with the fword. The Emperour being advertised hereof by the Captaines, was troubled: for to go thithither in person, alwayes to remaine there, his pleafure and rest which he promised vnto himself did withholde him; fo as having fecretly fent for Odmar and Confultation Axalla about these affaires, and to know whether it were necessarie he should go thither: Axalla presentlie perswaded him vnto this voyage, and to leave Odmar there in his countries where hee was, whose wifdome would prouide for all. But the Prince who did alreadic perceine the sweetnesse that was in Cities, in comparison of the wilde life in Armies; as heretofore he had taken delight therein, fo at this present apprehending this maner of living, hee determined to preserve his estate by his Lieutenants, and himfelfe to rest, and enion the fruits of his trauaile, being alreadie of the age of fiftie yeares, he thought before hee died to take his rest; and to content himselfe with the remembrance and contemplation of so many happie victories and worthie deedes, and to preferue in full peace his conqueftes without enterprifing or attempting any thing but in his owne defence: fo as he turned himselfe towards Prince Axalla, and fayd vnto him, that furely hee would maintaine Odmer in quiet'as long as hee could; and furelie Refolation. hee should have bene vngratefull vnto his fervices, if hee had not prouided for him a quiet life: that his opinion did greatly content him, for to give vnto him this government, that hee might end his dayes in those quiet and peaceable countries, in continuing

with honour the faithfulnesse of his service. That his own person wold make his abode at Sashetay, to be the nearer vnto the occasions his Armie might have of his presence in Persia, where he would leave the same and would increase it with the number of thirtie thoufand horse: but his pleasure was that hee should go and command ouer it, for that he knew him the only perfon in his Empire which could performe that service, hauing tried the affection that the fouldiers did beare ynto him together with the care hee alwayes had for the observation of militarie discipline : that hee trusted him with all his estate, trusting him with his Armie, whereupon onely depended the keeping of so manie great prouinces, and the terror vnto fo many nations, differing both in language and manners over whom he commanded, and of whom he was the conquerours that he only should have an eie vnto all that should be necessarie for the maintenance of his Armie; and that the first foundation of his revenues & the best should be appointed thereunto, as well for the recompence of his fouldiers, as for the ordinarie paymentes; that hee would have them to be kept in the ancient diferof the Parthi- pline of the Parthians, the which is, to lodge in the of pen fieldes, and to keepe within the Campe and from three moneths vnto three moneths to diflodge, buying all, and paying for all; that he had alwayes bene brought vp within his Armie, for to confider the valour and deferts of eueric one; that hee had governed themsthat the Captaines and fouldiers should beerecompensed as hee should appoint according to their deserts; that Persia was the place where hee would keepe his Armie, for that their mindes are more stirring and impatient in bondage. Also that the bor-

ders

The discipline

ders of Siria, were neare for to helpe the fame upon occasions offered, if there were any neede. And turning himselfe vnto Prince Odmar, he said, he would commit two parts of his efface varohim the bottome of his ri ches, and his most precious treasure his some; thurall things were in great quietneffe where hee would have him for to governe; that he should be there honored in all peace, an effate fir for his old age, and for the recompence of his fertifices (Calling (after that) his Chancel lour ynto him, who was not at this difcourfe; he comi maunded him to dispatch our Commissions, the one dispatched by for Odmar in the authoritie and government of all the the Changeller estate of Quinzai and Cumbala, over vnro the fea and onto Odmar vnto the mountaines, being the borders of China. Vato for their go-Axallathe governement of Lieutenant generall ouer wernements, his armie, and the authoritie and commaundement in all the Provinces, through the which the fame did march cuen as the Emperours owne perfon. This rimor being spread touching wakla for his government ouer the armie, and come you the campe othere was never scene to much joy amongst the Captaines and fouldiers, every one of their remembring the particular lat affection they Hid beare him; 80 his deferes towards every mail Better melves could not be brought with the mapes, who was made by him, &caduanced by his hand. Odmar was left at Cambalu to make preparation for his iorney unto Quinzai, very well farisfied with the choise the Emperour had made of him: and the Emperour haning caisfedhim so be inflideted in his affaires and pari ticularly of his Provinces, he himfelfe did command him that as foome as his fonne should be tenne yeares old, he should be brought up in the affaires, and that all shold be imparted vito him; to the end he might learne

betimes to ferue the common wealth, not willing to trouble his head before that age, but for to fuffer him to play with those of his owne yeares, Kam Tal inchica was che nambof this young Prince, the which is as much as to fayin the Parthian torigue, as, The loue of men; he had received his name of the Emperour his wakle in the ablence of his father wand in trueth this name was verie convenient for him a for manie men did loue him, and principally the Provice wherein he was borne, the Emperour not beeing able to carrie him with himselfe vnto Samarcand, where the Empresse was, andit seemed unto the people of Quinthat they were utterly undoone if they should place the look his presence, and if he should goe out of their for their gacitie. In the end they to earneftly befought his Maieftie, that he graunted them the bringing of him vp in his youth amongst them. So the Emperour went vnto Samarcand, having taken such order as was convenient throughout all his Empire he determine the to make his ordinarie abode there, and to make this citie (the place of his birth) worthie to be the feate of his fueceffors, so faire would he make it, large ; and beautified with all manner of faire buildings in Deuotion did atfo drawe him vnto folitarinesse a whereunto his nature inclined as much as was possible. Where had it not bene for a certaine defire of glory he had, which forced his nature of long time, he had plaied this part. It is alfo a great wifedome to knowe how to commaund his inclination and also to be able to content himselfe with glorie, and to suppresse his ambition, and enjoying it, to begin in good time to give vnto himfelfe a happie end, if it be possible, and that this is the will of fortune the enemie vnto mans quiet: for oftentimes that which

men purpose, God the chiefe gouernour of all things doth frame it after another manner; but the happe of the Emperour, the which I do attribute voto the honor and reverence he did beard visco the Dibinitie was the cause the same had care of him, and favoured his purposes. Now returning backe againe vnto Prince Axalla, who after he had received this commaundement was nothing fluggish: fo as he gathered together from all partes the old fouldiers which had benedischarged. it feeming vnto him they had enjoyed fufficient reft he fent also on the other side vnto the Moscouite, to draw from thence fouldiers on horfebacke for his guard trufling greatly in their valour and courage, and all the way he entertayhed the Emperour about the order it would please him should be observed in his armie. Axalla propounded vnto him that which was convenient to be done : the Emperourthen did either adde thereunto or take away as it feemed good vnto him for in the most excellent arte of warre he had fo great knowledge and experi-man in the art ence, thatno man was equall vinto him. Prince Axalla of warre. was the next voto him in this vertue for the faithfull & wittie executing of his commaundements, The Emperour going by fmall ionneyes, by reason of the Court which was great, and the traine of his cartes, the which were in great numbers, which did greatly vexe Prince Axalla for his dispatch was referred unto the coming to Samarcand, the Emperour continuing fometimes where he found good hunting : he greatly loued wed hunting these bonest exercises, the which kept him (as he faid) but as a good in breath, that he should not finde the paines of armes exercise; straunge vnto him: but Axalla drew forward the Emperour as much as he could vnto Samarcand, where he arrived at the end of Sommer, where he found the

Empresse, who had a verie faire some readie for circucition, for the which were made an infinite number of magnificences. In the meane time Axella dispatched his affaires, and the effate of his armie : for the Emperour had in the middest of his greatest pleasures, certaine houres for the affaires of his estate, the which he neueromitted. All matters thus dispatched, Prince Axalla having taken his leave of the Imperial Maiestie, he fet forward, & had with him some twentie thousand horse, all the flourishing youth of the Court accopanying him. The Emperor defiring they should be trayned vp in the paines of wars, rather then in the delicacies of a Court: for the Prince did advance vnto charges those which were in his armie, and not fuch as remained in his Court, except they were by his expresse commaundement neare about his owne person. The Emperour whilest these matters passed thus, received newes from the Prince of Thandis, appointed Gouernor ouer Siria and Egypt, who fent him word, that all things in those parts were very quiet, a thing which brought great contentment vnto the Prince, who had his minde wholly bent vnto peace, bufying himfelfe in building of his cit Tameria built tic of Samarcand, and in decking of a fumptuous Temq plethe which he had built; wherein he means to make

a Temple at Samarcand, and called it Salamon.

fulmffe towards God.

his Tombe, and for his fucceffors, the which he caused the Temple of to be named the Temple of Salomon! And there did he hang vp all the Trophes which he had conquered from his enemies: he caused also therein to be graven all the Tamerlanhie battels he had fought, together with the disertitie of Zealous grate- Nations he had ouercome, and the countries hee had conquered. To the end he might (he faid) thew vnto his great God, how greatly he did acknowledge his benefits & goodnesse. And because he had many Christians

of

of all kindes of artes and occupations, whom he had brought from all partes where they had given them vnto him: his pleasure was they should have a Temple built for to pray in the same, the which hee called the Teple of Ielus. This had Axalla obtained of the Prince. who hued according vnto this law, and many others alfo, of whom our armie was compounded, the Emperor feruing himselfe with them indifferently, having suffered thoroughout all his kingdomes the honour and freuerence of Iefus Christ, euen within the armie it selfe, and the facrifices of the Christians were offered, the Christians being his best souldiers, and the chiefest in his Court: so had he also many countries vnder his obedience the which were all wholly Christians, whose feruice he vsed in his warres, who would not be forced nor helde for other then such as were of his religion, in as much as they worshipped one onely God, and not allowing (no more then he) the pluralitie of Gods, the which about all other things he had in detestation and horror, driving away and destroying the Idolaters, declaring them flaues in all the countries of his obedience. And as this Emperor was religious, he would often heare holy men, as well of his owne religion, as of the Christians, whose austeritie he wondred at , being without oftentation as that of Guines was, and of others fayning holinesse for to get honour and praise amongst the people: but he did see one thing throughout all Egypt, whereat he greatly wondered, religious people who lived with dried things, refusing all moist things, which were in the deferts for the name of Iefus Chrift, whom they account God, depriving themselves of all delights for to follow his croffe & passion, things worthy admiration. He heard also recited the persecutions

of the Romaine Emperours against the Christians: this same caused in the Emperour (who was naturally religious) a respect towards them which were of this religion, recommending himselfe vnto their prayers, and putting as much trust in them as in his other subjects,

The gollinesse and instice of Tamerian. 234

maintaining them in the libertie and exercise of their conscience, as if they had beene his owne naturall subiects. And we must comend in the Emperour two actions, the which were without intermission exercised by him, that is to fay, godlinesse & iustice: for three times in the weeke at Samarcand he ministred open justice vnto the meanest, in his Imperiall Maiestie, a thing which made him beloued of the people ouer whom he comaded. In the other dayes he gaue secret audience for the affaires of his estate, & tooke advice for matters of importance, which were decided daily in his presence. He had fuch severity in his counsell, that they must needes deale truly before him, & without all paffion in discourfing. Notwithstanding he alwaies shewed himself courteous in his couerfation, & made himself both beloued & feared of his people:he neuer changed his feruats except they comitted great falts against him:of all the seruants of the late Emperor his vnkle he did not change one of them, but he did withall encrease their estates, making the in this change to feele his liberality, which he made strangers for to tast also, vnto whom he was accustomed to give, to binde the vnto him. He drew great store of money yearely for tribute of the Moscouite:but he distributed it within the same countrey for to maintaine his authoritie there, winning those for his which

might haue hurt him, by meanes of giving vnto the. He had great care of his revenues, and he had such a readi-

nesse, that he did see his estate fro three monethes vnto

three

Tamerlan his great liberality

Tamerlan bis cave of his reuenue.

three monethes within one houre, both the ordinarie and extraordinarie expences, they presented it so well digested-vato him. His revenue was not certaine, for he augmented or increased it according vnto his owne good pleasure, and one certaine day in the yeare he increased or deminished the same. His great Tresurer was very familiar with him, as one who made him continually an account of his doings, and also for to receive at enery houre his commandements: the great Treasurer paied the estates of all the Princes and great officers with his owne handes, and all the reuenues by himfelfe or by deputies for whom he was answerable, being administred generally in all the Proninces by him for to distribute them according to the Princes will. Thefe estates were verie daungerous: I have seene two of them punished with death most cruelly, being found to abuse their offices. After the death of the old Empe- Seuere punish. ror, all money was reduced under the image and armes ment against of the Prince, and all other forbidden. During the furers. time that the Emperour didremaine at Samarcand, he did greatly reforme the estate of his revenues, & everie one made account that he would make a great foundation therein, and they knew not wherefore he made fo great a heape thereof he was accounted to be very liberall, which is a point of no small commendation in Tamerlan ye the great; the same was verie ordinarie, and as it were of liberall. borne with him, being wont to fay, that on the day he had not given fomething, that hee had done nothing in all that day: faying, that giving doth commende men, making them like vnto God. Often glorying that never anie had refused that which hee offered vnto them. Nowe let vs returne againe vnto Axalla, who as foone as he was come vnto the armie,

caused the old laws to be published, the which the Emperor did observe when he did first begin his wars, the which had beene cancelled, and left in all the orders of warfare, many strange fashions being mingled therein. which did cause the decay of the militarie discipline. Prince Axalla affembled the Captaines of the armie, declaring vnto the, the diforders which were amongst their companies, for the which he did not blame them, but the heads which had commaunded them these two or three yeares: but hee defired them, together with himselfe to take the paines for to reduce all things into the first forme of the Parthian discipline; that he would not give vnto them any new thing, but he was only desirous indeede for to cause the auncient discipline to be observed. The which was, first to encampe every where; to entrench the campe, commanding that the fouldier who was become daintie in the garrifons, should accustome himselfe againe from hence forward vnto the paines of the field, strengthening himselfe by travelling with those which were appointed onely for the fortifying of the campe, the number of whom was alwayes five and twentie thousand in the Imperial Armie, That he would have the first number wherein there was anie commandement amongst the footmen, should be ten. flanding cape, next an hundred, then a thousand, and afterwards ten thousand, ouer whom one should commaund alone vnderneath the Colonell generall:amongst the horsemen an hundred, next a thousand, then ten thousand, and after that the generall of the armie should commaund ouer all. He caused particular viewes to be made, for to settle this order. He had three score thousand footmen

> within his armie, ouer whom commaunded fixe Colonels vnder the Colonell generall, there were 40000.

horfe

The Parthian discipline.

The order of Tamerlan his

horse vnder soure heades, whereof therewere ten thoufand light horsemen. He had his particular gards beside these, which did amount vnto 2000 horse, and 4000 footmen, these encamped about the generals person. Behold the estate which the Emperour commaunded to be observed within the Army, the which onely they called Imperiall, the others not having that name: for there is in Siria an army of thre-score thousand me, twenty thousand horsemen, and forty thousand footme. as many in China: as many towards Cambalacas many towards Moscouie: as many towards Cherroneze, but not in the field, except then when neede required. But this army thus ordered was a found body, the which was fit to strengthen the other bodies of his armies (the which were weake and ill ordered) vpon the first need. Prince Axalla travelled also to fearch out the inventions which the Christians had, and this caused he to be performed by meanes of the lewes, who did traficke into all partes: and he spared no cost for to get all forts of inventions and engines, the which might ferue in the art militarie, wherein was all his study, for to excell in the same . So as he obtained the invention of artillerie, the which was The invention new amongst the Christians, and it was brought vnto of Artillery ahim by a Greeke, who had ferued him euer fince the christians. death of Prince Andronicus . The same did greatly astonish every one, to behold the violence of the powder: that caused them also to study the more thereon, for to get the full perfection thereof, wherein the Emperour did spend greatly, in causing some of them to be made, after he had gotten people which had skill to make them, as also for to get some of them already made. For we had alwayes indeede this invention, to thrust forward a bullet by a violent motion,

but with this powder it was a thing wonderfull, and of great altonishment. The Emperour would have the prayle of this invention to be given vnto Prince Axalla, the which he caused to be written within the historie of his raigne for an eternall memory, amongst the services he had done him for the increase of his Empire, euen as also he had acknowledged them in earnest, having giuen vnto him more then a million of reuenues, befides his ordinarie penfions, the which did amount vnto as much. Odmar had not much lesse, and also the Prince of Thanais had a great estate. I have left vnspoken of an infinite number of other acknowledgements of services, the which he bestowed vpo them that ferued him well: for the meanest souldier might hope for the greatest honours of the Empire : for the first notable service of the soldierwas remembred; for to encourage him to do the better, so as the reward for the good, and punishment for the wicked, were distributed according vnto their desertes. That same held this great Empire linked together, in such fort, as it could not disseuer what onset soeuer he had, how great soeuer the same were; so as by that order, as soone as any warre was begun, it was as soone ended. And for his new conquests, they did order the same so well for him, that revoltes did seldome happen in the same; and if any did chance, they were well punished, and but of small waight. Thus our estate was in his force, & at his period, & very hardly could be greater. Our Prince waxed old, & became heavy, his fonnes grew to be great, & me began to worship the sonne rising. But the Emperour did beare such loue vnto them, that there was nothing did vexe him, nor any iealoufie, but the feare he had that after his death they should not have so much valor & wifdoine,

dom, as to preserve his estate together, searing divisios, often lameting that he had not a third fon for to agree them both whe as they should be at strife, as it is a thing which doth often happen; and he was therein a Prophet: for this great Mouarchie through deuision of the brethren was ouerthrown and dispersed after his death, as we shall see in their historie. Now to returne vnto the affaires that passed there, Prince Axalla, who was desirous to be doing, being returned from Babilon, whither hee went vpon some revolt, gaue the Emperour to vnderstand that the Ottamans having knowledge of the death of the Emperour Baiazet within the prison at Samarcand, had chosen his second sonne called Calepin, and that they gathered together, a great Armie for to conquer all Natolia againe. And that the Emperour who was troubled much with the inward warre against his bretheren in Greece, harkene d not after the affaires of Asia. That this was of great importance for his greatnesse. That even within Persia Democares had gathered forces together, and came towardes him. That he thought good to give his Maiestie vnderstanding of these newes, to the ende it would please him to adulte himselfe therein; that he was most ready to receive his commandements, and that he would fet forward after hee had received the same; that hee did affure him, his army was wel disposed to do him seruice; that it was much better to go & meete the, & to fortifie his borders, the for to stay for the warres in Persia, where their minds were not as yet sufficiently confirmed in his friendshipsthat Lichibanes who was gouernour in Natolia, had retired his forces vpo this rumour out of Burfia, the which he had vnmateled and destroyed, not having sufficiet forces for to keepe it, and had retired theselues

Q 2

2073WS

Refolution.

vnto the mountaines looking for the forces he hoped to receive from his Maiesty, seeing there was no city of importance in the champion country. These newes beconfultation. ing come vnto the Emperour, he affembled together his counsell, where these affaires were consuled of, whereupon it was in the end resolved, that Prince Axalla shold fet forward with the Imperiall Army directly towards Natolia for to joyne with Lichibanes; that the Emperor should send Odmar with the forces of Quinzai and Cambalu towardes the frontiers of the Muscouite, Zerisanes with twentie thousand horse, the which should be sent vnto the Moscouit and his allies, for to require of him the forces he oweth vnto the Emperour by his submiffion, the which was ten thousand horse; that the Prince of Thanais should also set forward with as many as hee could raife, with his horfmen; vnto the gouernour of Babilon also to raise even to the number of twentie thousand horse, and fiftie thousand footmen; a commandement into Persia to leavie men every where. And to this ende there was a commandement fent from the Emperor vnto all the Cities of hiskingdomes, and Comissioners wer appointed for to make choise of the me, fome for wars, the other for the workes. Victuals were commanded in all the Emperours countries for fetting forward of the Armie. The great governour of Parthis Zamai was dispatched vnto Deristan, to be there for to receive all the troupes, and commandement was given vnto the Commissioners for victuals and munitions to convey them thither. It was published over all that the Emperour went thither in proper person, for to punish once againe this proude race of the Ottomans. In the meane time Aralla marched directly towardes the borders, and he went like a ball of snow, his Armie alwayes

alwayes increasing, being glad of so good occasion. The Emperour having fent vnto him his resolution, with a commandement also to take and leave all that should be necessarie for the maintenance of his Army, in all the places of the Emperours revenues . Axalla marched with diligence, being desirous to come vnto the borders, and to joyne with the forces thar stayed for him, for to fight with and expulse the enemy, before the Emperour should come vnto him, whereof he had an expresse commandement, the Emperour for this occasion marching slowly, in such maner as he greatly defired to execute the same by Prince Axalla, this journey being troublesome vnto him, by reason of his indisposition. Where to the end nothing shold be wanting vnto him, he sent a commandement vnto the Prince of Thanais to go and meete with Prince Axalla, as soone as he had settled his gouernment. He caused also two or three thousand horse to go one after another, who cante vnto him with diligence. Paffing also by Tauris, he drew from thence five thousand horsemen, and ten thousand footmen of ordinary garrison, ouer whom commanded a Lord called Aliren, greatiy affectioned vnto the Emperors service, and principality of Prince Axalla. Arriuing also in Armenia hee drew out of the garrisons as many as amounted vnto twenty thousand horse, so as his army was very neare 80000 horsmen, and 160000 footmē: the Emperor making account to be accopanied also with as many forces from Parthia, as also from the Moscowite. Now the Emperour could not come before it was neare fixe moneths and flowly as I have fayd waxed fickly. marched his owne person, not being wel at ease, hauing complanied these 3. moneths of a paine in his reines, in so much as some doubted greatly lest this sicknesse wold

mai greatio

Aftrologians.

bring some other accident; for he decayed greatly, and did eate nothing, notwithstanding this was only knowen amongst his familiars, who greatly feared the inconuenience that happened. Notwithstanding some report, that an Astrologian did say, that he should give a battellynto all the East, and that he should be victorious; another did aduertise him, to take heed of the third day of the Moone, of the ninth moneth of the yeare wherein he now was; so as the Emperour did thinke he should dye in some battell and not in his bed. For he often fayd amongst his men, that he did acknowledge him felfe to be mortall, and that he was subiect vnto the law of nature; that he did often thinke of paying his tribute. Now he looked for Odmar, who should bring the Prince his eldest some vnto him, prouiding wisely for his affaires before he would march any further, faining to be desirous to carrie him with him, and to teach him to know his subjectes, and the meanes to serue him selfe with them if any ill fortune happened vnto him. But I beleeue the Emperour was desirous for to see him before he departed, determining to leave him at Samarcand with Odmar and the Empresse his mother; & what focuer his destinie appointed for him, he determined to passe ouer Bosphorus vnto Constantinople, and enter into Greece to roote out for ener the Empire of the Ottomans; and that he must once againe do this violence for to affure his effate, and fettle the foundation of his glory. Now during the time that the Emperour stayed the comming of the Prince his sonne, who by reason of his young age came flowly with Prince Odmar, Prince A-Tamerlan his xalla whose desire of reputation and glory did waken fecond journey him an hundred times in a night, went in great diligece, and so well, that he came vnto Turcomanie, where the

against the Ottomans.

Georgian

Georgian troupes which the Emperour did there intertaine came vnto him, and he drew out of them full fifteene thousand men, very gallant and well trained in the warres. At the length he arrived at Garga, whither the Gouernour of the Province did come vnto him for to receive the Emperours commandements. Being come thither, he would not enterprise any thing before the Prince of Thanais were come, who made great halt; he brought but 15000.horfe & 30000. footmen with him. As soone as he was come, he made him partaker of the Emperors comandemets, & imparted vnto him the honor of leading the auatguard of the Imperiall armie, and vnto the gouernour of the countrey the arier-guard: for he was a man of great authoritie, and had bin long time honored of the Emperour; the end of his gouernement was limited on the one fide with Persia, and on the other with Syria. Now the most part of the countreis which the Emperor had coquered in Natolia, he had delivered Tribute payed them vnto the obedience of the Grecian Prince, who by the Empeshould pay a certaine yearely tribute for the same vnto rour of Greece the Emperour, the which amounted vnto foure hundred for the most thousand ducats of gold, and eight hundred thousand bart of Nato. frankes of filuer. Axalla fent vnto the Emperor of Greece to give him vnderstäding that he was come vnto Garga, in the which place he gathered together his forces, and that the Emperour his Lord had sent him to prepare his army there, and that his owne person did march thither in his oldage, forto performe the same good office vnto him the which he had done vnto the late Emperour his father; that he defired him to pacifie the inward quarrels, for to remedie the euils abroad, the which increased; and that he would in the end put his estate into the same or greater daunger then it had bin, if he did not

thinke vpon quenching the civill and particular difcordes, for to take care for publike matters. All this could preuaile nothing with these Princes, who had made division of the Empire, and were at debate every one about his portion: but they considered not, that by this deuision they did build a portion for a third, the which was greatly for his aduantage, if they did not remedy the same, whereunto hee perswaded them. At fuch time as the Embassador came, who was a very wife man, they thought Prince Axalla had only certaine troupes of ten of twelve thousand horse: but as soone as they understood of the great army he had, they entred into fuspition, that the same might be as well against them as Calepin, although he affured them of all maner of good will of the Emperors part, infomuch as prefently it was negotiated to treat some argreement between the brethren, at the least a truce, but peruailed nothing: for they would not trust their elder brother. Vpon the Embassadours returne, we learned where Calepin was and his army, and of what quantity it was. After he had made a generall review, and caused a muster to be had of all the fouldiers, hee marched directly towards the enemie who was in Caramania. Calepin was greatly aftonished to see the diligence this Armie had made, the which he had caused to be viewed by his spies; hee did thinke it had bene but of ten or twelue thousand men onely: but when he knew how great an Armie it was, he entred into agreat feare, infomuch as having committed the whole charge of his Army vnto a Basa, he retired towards the sea; hee remaining onely of the stocke of the Ottomans, they thought it not good hee should hazard his person vnto the event of the battell,

although his Armie were great. But the Persians and

the

Differd betweene the brethren for the Empire of Greece, being denided among fi them.

the Mamelues had the principall forces, which made him doubt leaft any diffgrace happening vnto him, they should make their agreement vnto his domage, the which was not ill aduised. He had also intelligence from Persia that the Emperour marched forward, for to affist his forces with another great Armie, infomuch as hee repented that he had stirred the sleeping dogge. The Greeke on the other fide entred into a great suspition, of the great preparation the which was made in every place, not thinking that it was onely for Calepin: but in respect of his estate hee began to seeke the meanes The Greeke to affure the same, and also to demaund succour of feele aide of Calepin, affirming that the plot of this warre was begun the Turke bis against them both, and that the Emperour would not mortall enemy, content himselse to have the Tegean sea for his borders, merlan his apbut would certainely (if he could) stretch foorth his proved friend. conquestes beyond Constantinople; that he did perceive it was necessary for him to the affuring of his estate, to ioyne themselves together; that hee had especially heretofore very litle fauoured the gouernour the which the Emperour had left, after the death of the Greeke Emperour his father. Also hee had not desired the Parthian Emperour to vndertake this voyage, and much lesse had made anie countenance to fayour him, for feare of breaking with Calepin, with whom hee had made a certaine agreement, so fainthearted was hee. All these matters put him in a great doubt, and made him to thinkeypon ioyning himselfe with Calepin in good earnest, for to refist our forces if hee might. All these cogitations were good, but it was very late to aduise thereof now, matters being very doubtfull in respect of Calepin, who was of the same mind, if he had had the leafure: but all remained now vpon the hazard

against Ta-

The Turke & the Soldanioywed together against Tamerlan

Calepin bis for-

of a battell, the which he was constrained to aduenture, feeing that delay did bring more hurt then profit. Also the forces which he did hazard, were most of them Persians and Mamelues, banished men and fugitives, who had taken the contrary part against the Emperour. I hold opinion that the Bassa had fifteen thousand Persian horsemen verie good, and thirtie thousand footmen, commanded by the Prince of Tauris a fugitine: the Mamelues were in number twentie thousand horse, commanded by a Soldan whom they had chosen, and it is five yeares fince he hath made war in Arabia, from whence he was driven: in the ende, he had bin entifed by Calepin, & had entredinto this league vpon hope that if his affaires had good successe, he would give him aide for the recovering of Syria and Egypt, & of the principality of the Mamelues. The Basa had five and twentie thousand horse, & thirty thousand footmen, Calepin having brought fixe thousand of them with him for his guard, so as the Basa who was a great Captaine, did affure himselfe to ouercome our men, who he fayd were compounded of people nothing affected vnto the Parthian name (but he was greatly deceived.) This same was the Bassa who was taken the day before the battell, wherein Baiazet was taken, vnto whom the Emperour did giue a horse: he sayd that he was affured that he knew our maner of fight, and had noted well the fault Baiazet had committed in the battell the which he had loft, the which did bring them more hurt by reason of the sayd Emperours presence, being a Captiue, then for any other losse, the same hauing bene much more bloudie on our fide: and he fayd true. And this was the occasion wherefore he would not have Calepin commit Baiazet his fault; behold the reasons of the Ottomans. Prince Axalla as I have sayd, had

had made a generall muster, hee had found to be in the Imperiall Armie an hundred thousand footmen, and foure-score thousand horsemen, there were of them threescore thousand most brave and resolute men, of the Princes trayned men and all of them old fouldiers. there were foure fcore thousand very good men who where commanded by Sinopes, defirous of honour and glory. As foone as the enemie had turned his face towards vs, and that Prince Axalla had asked the aduise of the Princes and Captaines of the Army, he marched straight towards him vnto Goualashe, the which was yet thirtie leagues from vs; who marched in small journeves, neuer going farre from the sea side, in respect of victuals, whereof they received with eafe good quantitie, so as all thinges abounded within their Army, but we had some want thereof. Now in the end Prince Axalla commanded a Parthian Captaine called Stucan. who did leade the light horsemen of the Army, to have an eye that the enemies did not furpirfe the Army, and that we should not faile but have word thereof, as soone as they drue neare vnto vs. Now he was a very wittie and vigilant Captaine and a man of enterprise, infomuch as having a fouldier of the countrie with him vnto the place where their Armie was lodged, knowing the language, hee thought with himselfe that in an Armie of fundrie nations he might intermingle himselfe as it did march, and performe some braue peece of service: the which he having imparted vnto Prince Axalla, hee allowed well of the enterprise, and thought that it might bee performed. So Stucan aduaunced forward with three thousand horse within ten leagues of the Armie, and arrived at Regdin, where hee found a part of the Ottomans Armie aduaunced,

and having gotten vnderstanding by some prisoners, that the enemies marched towards the forefront of the Army, having viewed their Campe, he determined to enter into the same by the meanes of this fouldier, who vnderstood the language, fayning that hee came from some service, whither he had bene sent for to be a guide vnto two thousand Persian horse, who returned from thence, and that at this very time he would mingle himselfe and surprise them vnawares, the which fell Astratageme. out : for having advanced two hundred horse with these fouldiers, they mingled themselves within the army, and being followed by Stucan, he made himselfe men by Stucan maister of that which was the safegard of the army, the which were their lighthorsemen, and there were slaine of them more then three thousand men of those which Turkes Campes were aduanced forward: the rest of the army being on horsebacke, did not pursue our men in their retraite, thinking it had bene our whole army, the which caused them to hold the bridle with their footmen, chusing rather to loofe their stradiots then the substance of the army. In the morning they were greatly aftonished whe they understood our Army was as yet ten leagues off, and that they were but three thousand horse, the which had put fo great diforder in the campe. The Basa was determined to stay for our army, and if it were possible to weary the same before he came vnto the battell, being advertised that we had not victuals at our owne pleasure. Prince Axalla being come within fine leagues of the enemies army, he intrenched his army, and made a fnew of abiding there. Now he was very defi-

> rous to view the situation of the enemies Campe, and having one day advanced all his Army in a playne within two leagues of the enemies Army, he would

> > fet

The worthy exploys perforwith three thousand light horfe in the inthonight.

fet forward for to view their countenance, and the place where they were encamped: the which he having done, he perceived the way by which their victuals did come vinto them, and rayling the Campe, he determided either to compell them for to fight, or elfe to lodge betweene them and the sea, for to cut off the way of their victuals: for he was well aduertifed of the enemies purposes: and being vncamped, he marched in battell array directly towardes the enemy, as if he meant to have affaulted him within his trenches. In the meane time he caused his Armie to be lodged within a league of him. Now the Bassa who had not stirred out of his Campe, knew not what was our purpose, our armie hauing bene in battell array, within the view of their Campe abone eight houres, in the meane time our fouldiers lodged. The enemie who did not thinke any fuch matter, was greatly aftonished, when some of his men came and declared vnto him that we were lodged so neare vnto him, and did hinder their victuals, and hauing affembled the chiefe Captaines of his Army, to have their aduise, hee determined to come vnto the fight, and give a battell, if he did perceive that our purpose was to hinder him from the sea, he would yet indeuor as much as he could to procure that his victuals might come, making triall by scoutes to do the same. So the day being come, the Baßa caused fixe thousand horse to issue out for to discouer our purposes, giuing comandement vnto the who he sent to hazard nothing, but to retire if they did fee that any did stop the passage : fo as it falling out that the Captaine of our fide, the which had this charge, was this day on horseback, with x. thoufand horse, who vpon the first alarum of his enemie, did beate them brauely into their Campe, the which the

Baffa perceiuing, and that it was the purpose of our me he supposed hee could no longer thun the battell. And the same night he began to approach vnto the point of their campe neare vnto a mountaine, the which was nearer vnto them then vs, to lodge there in parcels, and also to the ende we should not lodge there at all, the which they did foresee might greatly preiudice them if we should win the same before them. So in the morning Prince Axalla had certaine newes that the enemies Army did dislodge, the which he desiring to descrie, mounted on horsebacke, and advanced forward with some twentie thousand horse for to behold their dislodging, determining to set upon them if hee saw cause, and followed them to take an occasion to do it vpon their lodging. But it fell out otherwife: for feeing their countenance, hee supposed prefently what they would do, and having called vnto him the Prince of Thanais and Sinopes, hee fayd vnto them, that he thought it not convenient to suffer the enemie for to intrench vpon this mountaine, for the discommodities we should receive thereby. For this cause hee commaunded Sinopes to set vpon them with twentie thousand men, and to hinder them from this mountaine, affuring himselfe that if he did win it, hee should have the victorie of the battell most assured. Now the place was fuch, as the horsemen could by no meanes do anie seruice there, by reason of a marrish that was at the foot of the same mountaine, the which did stretch a good league, but the footmen did easily march thither. Prince Axalla affured himselfe hee had good footmen, and that Sinopes who was desirous of honor, would not omit to give a strong assault vpon theenemies vpon this occasion. So our army being wholly ranged

ranged in battell arraie, Prince Axalla caused all his footinen to aduance forward: hee determined to fight on foot if the enemies did wilfully attempt the fame mountaine, and having comanded the Prince of Thanais to keepe himfelfe at the head of all the horsemen who were in battellarray, he aduanced forward, for to fuccor Sinopes in good time, who advanced luftily with twenty thousand men only. Prince Axalla having aduifed with himselfe, as the best, to cause them to march along by a litle hill, and that by this way they shold do their endeuors by furprifing of the enemy, who could not perceive them: to as they should as soone feele their blowes and affault, as fee their persons; this being a Maxime that an enemy throughly viewed is halfe con- A Maxime. quered: this was the cause that the same became so great an aftonishmet vnto the enemy, to see himself affaulted not knowing whether it were with all the footmen, or part of the same. The enemies Army was at the other end of the marrish, & we were within the view the one of the other:but even as our men did give this onfer, you might have seene their whole army stir, for to resist the strong force of our men, the which continued a good houre. The Basa who was a discreet Captaine, commanded all the footmen he had to aide the which where vpon this mountaine, and although our men vpon the first fury had won the top of the mountaine, so as then the enemies did fight on foot comming vp, the which was a great aduantage for our men. Axalla perceiuing this aide mount vp, commanded also 20000 of our men to opposethemselues against this new troupe which mouted, and after them he fent 25000 more, and came to this point, that he himselfe alighted, determining for to leade the third fuccour, faying, that as foone as he

should perceive another great troupe of footmen for to stirre, it was his turne to march. The Prince of Thanais

vnderstanding that he would go thither in person, sent to befeech him for to fuffer the Colonels of the footmen to performe that, and that it belonged vnto him only to command. Prince Axalla fent him word that this was a special match, and that if they did win the mountaine they should also win the battell; that he would this day obey him, and be his fouldier. About this time he did fee this great bodie moue, which was the remainder of the enemies footmen, the most part Janizaries. who at their coming, performed a wonderfull act: but in the end Prince Axalla comming with many of the brauest men about him, he put the enemies to slight, and did win the mountaine, and remained Maister thereof before he departed, and lodged there, intrenching himselfe on the enemies side. He left Sinopes to commaund there, who had this day gotten great honour. There died of our men fifteene thousand, and about thirtie thousand of the enemies: the fight endured from eight of the clocke even vntill night, our horsemen being lookers on, not any wayes able to helpe the footmen. The enemy having received this difgrace, marched ten good leagues that night, and for sooke his Campe as ouercome, but it was not without having the Prince of Thanais & Stucan at their taile, with his light fight by night, horsemen, Prince Axalla continually following them, encamped within two leagues of them, having alwayes the coast of the sea, and they bending towardes Caramania. Now the Baffa having received againe his spirits after this difgrace would encampe himselfe: but the Prince of Thanais discotented for that he had not fought, aduaced in such fort, that eue as we were ready to lodge wc

The discomfi. sure of the Baffa with his

had newes that it behoued to aide him with diligence. the which Prince Axalla vnderstanding, caused the figne of battell to be given speedily, and he himselfe with all the horfmen advanced forward. Now it was a litle river he had passed oner, not thinking the enemie had beene fo neare voto him: which the enemies perceiuing, they comanded 10000 Persian horse to give the first charge, the which they having valiantly performed, our men being engaged, without any other delay, were constrained to come vnto the fight ftrong & resolutely, and de- The rest mile fended themselves: but the enemies were foorthwith of the Prince backed with 20000 horse after them, the first charge of Thanais. not having beene but for to engage them: the fight was very furious, and our men were almost ouerthrowne. when as behold tenne thousand Persian horse ledde by the Prince of Hallicen, who fet forwarde with great diligence, and came for to affift the Prince of Thanais, who fought valiantly, and had two horfes alreadic killed ynder him, and did fight vpon the third: Stucan was Swan flaine, flaine, and all the light-horsemen overthrowne. Prince Axalla who perceived the fault which the Prince of Thanais had committed, did bite his lip, faying, that God had given him a goodly victorie, and that he must loofe the fame through anothers folly, and turning him selfe vnto his companions, he said vnto them, that this was the day wherein they must fight, not for glorie, but for the fafetie of all the Parthian people. Having fent forward with all diligence, tenne thousand horse more for to maintaine the fight, he came speedily vnto the order of fight, & advanced forward with forty thousand horfe, the which he put into three troupes: on front he followed the enemie, who had knit himfelf together, & pur our men to flight, having had alwayes the better -cnong

in all the former charges they had given. The Prince of Thanais at the third charge was overthrowne to the ground as dead in the enemies power : but the 10000. horse whereof I did speake, compelled the enemie to between sxal- fer this occasion to be lost without revenging the over-

The battaile la & the Baffit

make head against Prince Axalla, who would not fufthrowe of hismen. Now hee did perceive there was but two houres left of the day, the which caused him to presse forward vnto the battaile, and to constraine and force the enemie to come vnto the fame. Now the Balla hadnot as yet fought at all, who advanced forward with fifteene thousand fresh horse ftrengthening this charge: but Prince Avalla comming vnto the fight, he could not refift fo great a troup, & was ouerthrown. The Governour also of Natolia called Lenaven, who as yet had not fought, affifted Prince Axalla, and had yet ten thousand horse, who gathering our men together againe, they all joyned with Axalla, & repulfed the horfinen within their footmen, who giving themfelues ouer to flight, did forfake them : they could not flay our horfmen from affaulting them, fo as they were almost all slaine, having fought even vntill night: notwithstanding there retired about twentie thousand in order of battaile, the most part of them Ianizaries. who passed ouer the water, and hindred our horsmen from having so large a victorie as they otherwise should have had. Notwithstanding the next day we fent part of our horsmen under the Governour, for to keepe that none of the enemies should loyne themfelues together. They marched all that night led by their Captaine, whom they call Age, the lanizaries went in verie good order, speaking reproches of their horfnien, who had thus forfaken them they fortified! them-

Axalla bis vi-Etorse against the Baffa.

themselves, being resolved all of them to die for the The brane reprefernation of their Prince. After the dead were bu- Johnton of the ried, and care taken for the wounded, the Prince Ux- I am Zaries. alla left the Prince of Thanais fore wounded upon one The Prince of of his legges, and himselfe advanced forward more Thanan fore then tenne leagues, the enemies horsemen being as yet knit together fourteene thousand horse strong. The Prince Axalla having left all his carriages, followed the enemies, who could not joyne thefelues with their Janizaries, for we had gotten betweene them. The Ianizaries in this order wherein they marched, came along by the fea, the which Prince Axallavnderstanding , he fent ten thousand horse after them, and commaunded that all the footmen of the armie which had not yetfought, should march with diligence directly towardes them for to fet vpon them: but they had gone two greatiournyes, and embarked themselues at Galli- The langepoli, for topasse ouer into Europe, and ioyne with Ca- at Gallipeli lepin, who accused the Bassa for that hee had forsaken into Europe to them, and was fled away from them. There were about lopin. five and fortie thousand of the enemies slaine in this last day: these were two battels happily atchieued; there were flaine of our men aboue twentie thousand, and Prince Stucan was found amongst the dead underneath his horse, his target being vpon his face, all the whole armie made great lamentation for his death; he had greatly overthot himselfe, for he had like to have ouerthrowen all the whole armie. There was great joy made for the safetie of the Prince of Thanas, so preferued amongest the dead. The Prince Axalla did Axalla greatly greatly reprehend him for his rafhnesse, having beene the Prince of the occasion of the death of twentie thousand men, Thansin for his and to make the victorie vnto vs bloudie, the which

Axalla verie fad for the indisposition of she Emperour bis master.

not thinke to finde the maine forces of the enemies fo neare at hand. Prince Axalla fayd vnto him, that hee was in great doubt least such a matter would fall out, and for this cause he had advanced the armie as neare vnto the river as he could. But Prince Axalla notwithstanding all these great and happie victories, had not that which he defired, and shewing himselfe verie sad for that he knew the indisposition and sicknesse of the Emperour as incurable, he purposed to returne ento the Court to the end he might win the good favour of the young Prince, whom hee knewe the Emperour his father had fent for. And having affembled the Counsell, he caused the dispatch to be read, the which he did fend vnto the Emperour of the happie successe of the victorie; and in the meane time he lent after the enemies, to the end they should have no more leafure. but only to get the mountaines, and having given this comandement, very early in the morning he followed after with the rest of the army. The greatest part of the Persians sent to sue for their pardon, and did come and yeeld themselves, the Prince their chiefe having bene flaine; the head of the Baffa was brought by a fouldier, who had killed him in his retiring, at fuch time as he did fee the Persians forsake him. This was the same Baffa, who had bene taken before in the battell wherein the Emperor Baiazet was taken prisoner. The prince Axalla followed continually the small remnant of the enemies Armie that remained: they made foule warre uppon the Mamelaes, because the most part of them had

fed himselse vpon Stucan and the light horsmen, who had advanced themselves too farre, and also bee did

The Baffaes bend brought vnto Axalla.

had fallified their faith giue vnto the Prince of Thanais, for the rest they made them faire warre. In lesse then fifteene dayes this armie was wholly ouerthowne, and Calepin retired into Europe, all the cities vpon the fea coast yeelded themselues. The winter drawing neare, the Armie demanded their pay, whereupon they tooke aduife, and having confidered where the same might winter, it retired towardes Goualache. The Prince of Thanais was desirous to withdrawe himselfe into his gouernement, and leade backe his troupes, as also to prevent the nouelties the which the indisposition of the Emperour might bring foorth, and Prince Ax- Aleague of alla and he, having sworne great friendship each vn-friendshippe to other, he went his way. The Prince having a de- Prince Axalla termination to ouerthrow the Empire of Greece the and the Prince next Sommet following, to the end hee might take of Thanais. from the Ottomans all oportunitie of waxing great, feeing the Greeke Emperour did fauour them, and having conquered againe all that which Calepin had wonne, without any great refistance. The Prince of Thanais was gone twentie leagues or thereabout, when as behold there came a post, who brought newes of the Emperours death, the which did happen two dayes af- The death of ter he had received the newes of this victorie, having the Emperous done nothing after the receipt of these news, but quietly end this life, speaking even vnto the last gaspe, with found and good sense, taking order for the affaires of his Empire, without any alteration in his accustomed manner. The Prince Axalla having received these sed the death newes whereof he doubted, withdrew himfelfe alone, of the Emperor and with all kinds of complaints, he bewailed the death Tamerlan priof his good maister, he concealed his death certaine int.

nately but bie-

dayes, and having with all diligence fent these newes vnto the Prince of Thanais, he defired that it would please him they might meete for to consult of their affaires. So they appointed a place to meete in about this accident. This post brought his dispatch figned with the name Sautochio our Emperour, by the which he was comaunded to leave 40000 men with the Gouernour of the borders, and himselfe to take his journey thorough Persia with his army. This post was followed by a fauorite of the new Emperor, who came vnto Prince Axalla for to gratifie him, & to make him an affectioned feruat vnto the Emperour, as a person whom he knew very necessarie for to maintaine the greatnesse of his Empire. holding in his power at this day, the principall forces, besides the great authority hee had of long time enioved with the late Emperor: fo as the quiet of the Empire depended more vpon Prince Axalla, then vpon any one especially having had very lately so famous a victorie. This same did greatly procure him the good will, both of the Captaines and fouldiers: but there was nothing but worthinesse in Prince Axallaes mind, who affured the new Prince of his faithfulnesse, and obediwards his new ence vnto his commandements. I will not forget to declare, that during the time the armie did refresh it felfe. the Prince of Thanais came to meet with Prince Axalla, where interchangeably they did fwere faith the one vnto the other, for the preservation of their honours and estates. They thought it best to coceale the death of the Prince Axalla late Emperour, the one of them in the armie, the other in his gouernement: but even as evill newes doth difperse abrode sooner then good, so did Axalla vpon his returne find these newes spread ouer all, the which be percei-

The worthie mind of Prince Axalla to-Prince.

The meeting of the Prince of Ibanau & to what end.

perceiuing, thought good to cause the armie to bee afsembled together, and there for to give them vnderstanding of the losse of their Emperour. You did neuer The laments fee fo many cries, and fo much shedding of teares: hee tion for the exhorted them vnto the same faithfulnesse and affecti- death by the on towards the young Prince his sonne, for the honour whole armie, of the late Emperour: the which they promised, euen Axallaes faith vnto the meanest souldier. Axalla caused the oath of fulnesse vnto fidelitie to be particularly taken by the chiefest of the the Prince. Armie, and after he had covered all the standarts with mourning weede, according to our custome, and had made also a muster of all his fouldiers, wherehe did againe exhort them to honour the memorie of their late Emperour, towards the Prince his sonne, saying vnto them, that he did not die at all, feeing he had a sonne, who deserved to be beloued of everie one for his vertues, vnder whose good fortune they should henceforward fight, who would acknowledge their feruices. That it was convenient to go vnto him for to receiue the recompence of their faithfulnesse; that he was young for to exercise the young, and liberall for to confider well of their trauels; that hee would neuer forfake them, but would be alwayes their Protector. After that was done, he seuered vnto the Governor those men as hee thought necessarie to remaine with him. for to keepe this countrie in peace, and to hinder the enemies from fortifying of the felues: the which Prince Axalla having performed, he advanced two dayes iournies forward. Now for to recite that which paffed at the Emperours death, this it is, that feeling himfelfe ill disposed, having from all partes sought for health: in the end, seeing nature did decaye in him, he called for Sautochio his eldest sonne, vnto whom

Tamerlan his discourse vato all his counfell lying woon his death bed.

The Emperour in the presence of Odmar, and of all his Councell, he difcoursed of the course of his life euer since the death of busonne before his father Zachetay, who being given over to contemplation, had left vnto him three personages neare vnto his person, for to affist and counsell him, of whom (faid he) there remaineth none aliue at this present but only Odmar, being the youngest of the three, the which had brought him vp as well in the actions of warre, as the affaires of peace, whereof you may judge by the great enlargement he hath added vnto Zachetay, the which he had obtained as well through his great reputation, as by force; and that the hope every one conceived of his vertue in his youth, had called him vnto the full fuccession of the Tartarian Empire. For having by the coufell of thefe three, as fathers, enterprised the warre against the Moscouite, whose armes were at that time the most to be feared of all Asia, this enterprise having had good successe, not onely all his neighbours, but all his kinsemen, desired to have peace and friendship with his armes, and the Emperour his vnkle, whole purpose was to deuide his Empires amongst his Princes, whom he loued, for my valour chaunged his determination, hearing my reputation to refound, and that I had in this young age thorough my good conduct, ouercome the common enemie vnto our Nation; whereupon I was judged by him worthie to commaund the fame. and sending to offer his daughter vnto me in mariage, he made choise of me to succeed him in this monarchy, hoping that I would ease his old age, and that I would guide the yeares which remained vnto him in peace, thorough my trauell, and the reputation of my armes. He was not deceived in me, having honoured him alwaies as my Lord, and loued him as another father, carying

carying my felfe fo cunningly during his life, that at fuch time as his death happened, I kept this great Empire, without any comotion therin, but rather all fubiection and obedience. I will tell thee my fon, that I did not only succeed him in the Empire, but also in the loue of all his feruants, whom thou doest see about me, who have ferued me faithfully thesetwentie yeares, euer fince I have enjoyed this great large countrie, vnto whom the late Emperour my vnkle did promise only recompence of their feruice, but my felfe haue bene so much accompanied with good hap, that I have beneable to give vnto them. I leave vnto thee then these servants, who are worthy to bekings; honor them, and raignewith them: they will be faithfull vnto thee, and have remembrance of me for to ferue thee faithfully, and do know how to excuse thy youth and guide the same: beleeve their counsell. And taking Odmar by the hand, pulled him on the right fide of the place where he was fet, and looking vpon the other fide, he turned vnto the young Prince his fonne, faying vnto him: This side and place here shall bee kept for Axalla, who is absent, whose faithfulnesse and affection he had prooued, the worthy acts of whom were fo recommendable vnto all this Empire and himselfe, that he would speake no more vnto him of the same; that he commanded him to believe their counfelleuen as he had done, wherein he had found great goods that the Prince of Thanais was his kinfman, that he should esteeme of his faithfulnesse, and serve himselfe therwithsthat he might affure himselfe he would veeld him obedience, even to the spending of his owne life. In the end that hee recommended vnto him fo manie worthy Lords and Captaines, who had ferued him

faithfully in fo many warres he had made for the greatnesse of the Parthian Empire, ouer the which hee had left him to commaund without anie defert but for a faire hope, and for that he was his fon. And giving his hand vnto all the Princes and Lords, which he had caufed to come before him, hee presented them vnto his sonne, saying vnto him, that this was his Empire and good fortune, and demaunding his feale of the great Chanceller, hee put it into the handes of the young Prince, and caused the same tobe redeliuered vntohim againe, and having continued a certaine space without speaking, he faid vnto him : My sonne, loue iustice, minister it as well vnto the litle as vnto the great, this is your dutie, and he shall ease you therein sometimes. Remember your felf, that the weapons which you have in your hands, are but to make execution of the fame: this is the cause therefore that it behooveth the warres you begin be justly enterprised, and then will they have happie successe. As his speech was directed vnto the young Prince, he had the Chanceller neare him; wherupon during the same, there was a great noise more then was accustomed in the Emperors outward chamber, and asking what the matter was, they caused a Lord to enter in , fent from Axalla (nowe the Emperour had nothing at all left the care of his affaires, as he was accustomed, although they were somwhat the more flowely dispatched,) who brought newes of the happie successe of two battailes wonne in Natolia, by Newes brought the Armie led by Prince Axalla, victorious ouer Cale. von Tamerlan pins forces; and declaring this happie successe in his of Axallar vi. affaires, the messenger of these newes said vnto him.

clories in Na that he hoped the next sommer his person marching tolis againft Calepins force, forward, the Empire of Greece should be easie for him

to conquer, seeing the astonishment the enemies had. He answered him, that he neuer doubted of his foul-freich me the diers affections, but that hee was called by a greater messinger, and then himselse, and vnto a more happie conquest, sea- bis some, ted in a more high place, whither he must needs go. Tell Axalla (faidhe vnto the Lord which spake vnto him) that from hence forward hee must receive my fonnes commandements. And drawing a ring from off his thombe, comanded that it shold be carried vnto Prince Axalla, to fignifie vnto him the contentment he had in his seruice, and in witnesse of his faithfulnesse. He demaunded in generall of the health of all those of his Armie, recommending them vnto his fonne, euerie one according to their vertues and defertes: amongst the rest he recommended the seruices of the Prince of Thanais, commaunding his sonne to honour him as his kinfman, and to continue him in the charges and honours the which he had put into his hands, for that he did deserve the same; that hee should be well served by him. And returning againe to speake, he commanded his sonne, that if he committed his armies vnto any man to be comanded, it shold be vnto Prince Axalla, a thing notwithstanding which he did counsell him to do the latest he could, because it was fo precious a thing, and that if it were possible, he should not trust it with anie man but himselfe; that it was fit for the Parthian Emperors to be in the middest of their armies, & amongst the soldiers, even as householders are with their children, & that by this meanes he should preserve this great Empire, which he left to him by inheritance, hoping in time he would deferue it by his vertues. And as his last wordes he perswaded him to be gentle and curteous vnto his friendes, and

cerrible vnto his enemies, and if they demaund peace of you, do not in any case refuse it, and forgive your pareicular occasions, & do instice for the love of your people. This yong Prince had the tears in his eyes, and the Emperour contrariwise vttering these words, had a maiestie in his countenance more then accustomed. and causing his sonne to go out, he sent him vnto the Empresse for to comfort her. And having againe called for Odmar, he recommended vnto him the young yeares of his sonne, the love and faithfulnesse vnto his service, willing that his yonger son should be brought vp to obey his elder brother: for of the loue and agreement of the two brethren dependeth (faid he) the quier and preservation of this estate: and sending for them both, he was desirous to give them his last bleising. And they being come before him, he commanded the younger to obey his elder brother; and both of them together to honour the Empresse: and beginning to give them his bleffing, touching the head of Sautochio, he pressed it downe, and touching the head of the yonger, hee raised it vp, lifting vp his chinne, a presage that Letrochio the younger should be lifted up vnto the Empire, and should be the ouerthrowe of his elder brother, as it fell out afterwards through their divisions, the which caused the destruction of the Empire. Night being come he flept verie sweetly, and about the breake of day, according to his custome, hee caused them to be called vnto him which had any businesse with him: and Axallas dispatch being presented vnto him for to figne, vpon this last victorie obtained, hee figned it without any change of countenance, & after turning himselse, a slumbring tooke him againe, and they perceived he passed away vnto another life, they

Tamerlanhis last speech exblessing vnto hissonnes.

ran for to call the Emperour his fonne, who as foone The death of as he was come thut his eyes, powring out teares, as Tamerlan, alfo did all his feruants. The Prince Sautochio his eldeft fonne within two houres after was proclamed Empe- Prince Santorour throughout all the whole Armie, and dispatches Emperour and were made from all partes to advertise the Governors signed dispate of prouinces thereof, the letters being figned with the hand of the new Emperour, who having affembled all the Armie together, he made an oration vnto the Captaines and foldiers, and caused them to make a generall muster, gratifying all the ancient servantes of the Emperour his father: he would not dispose of anie thing before he had seene Prince Axalla, and was joyned with the imperial Armie. This young Prince, when he came vnto this Empire was nineteene yeares olde, Prince Sautohe was faire, and had much of the Emperor his fathers olde when he naturall disposition. They hoped that he would wiselie came me bis (through the good counfell that was about him)main- Empire. taine this great Empire: but they feared greatlie the young Prince Letrochio his brother (whom his mother loued) would cause divisions, as it happened in the times of their great grandfather betweene two brethren, who had bene occasion of the destruction of their estate, the which was relieued and lifted vp againe vnto his height by the valour of Tamerlan.

chio proclamed

FINIS.